Official Guide to South Africa

2017/18

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Official Guide to South Africa 2017/18

Fifteenth (15th) edition
Compiled, edited and published by:
Government Communication and Information System (GCIS)
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 473 0000
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*

Editor: Elias Tibane

Images supplied by: GCIS

Design and layout: Rachel Sekhu

ISBN: 978-0-620-79163-2

The Editor has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring confirmation of any data in the *Official Guide to South Africa* or more detailed and specific information, should consult the relevant department/institution. Additional information is also available on *Government Online (www.gov.za).*

Unless otherwise specified, information contained in this *Official Guide to South Africa* was the latest available as at October 2018.

Contents

Foreword

This edition of the *Official Guide to South Africa* 2017/18 coincides with the period of renewal, revival and optimism in our country. The invigorating "Send Me – Thuma Mina" clarion call challenges all South Africans to make a meaningful contribution towards the creation of a transformed and prosperous society with a diverse and inclusive economy, as envisaged in the National Development Plan (NDP): Vision 2030.

Despite sporadic incidences of racism, most patriotic South Africans are committed to upholding social cohesion and nation-building to create a united, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic and prosperous country. In its relentless pursuit to ensure a better life for all South Africans, government is making a concerted effort to tackle poverty and inequality by growing the economy and creating much-needed jobs.

As a secure, technologically advanced and attractive investment destination, South Africa is open for business. Government has introduced a number of enterprising initiatives to create a conducive environment to do business without hindrances. Agriculture and mining are some of the sectors which contribute to the economic growth and development of the country.

The NDP recognises tourism, which contributes about 9% to our gross domestic product and employs over 1,6 million people across the value chain, as one of the industries essential for economic growth and job creation.

As part of addressing the imbalances and injustices of the past, government will forge ahead with the orderly expropriation of land without compensation as a fundamental process to accelerate land redistribution and restore the dignity of the historically dispossessed people.

On the other hand, radical economic transformation will ensure the attainment of significant economic freedom by, among other things, accelerating shared and inclusive economic growth and transforming the ownership of business enterprises.

Government is determined to advance the socio-economic well-being of youth through various empowerment programmes such as the National Youth Service, which seeks to develop the abilities of young people through active service and learning.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 states that every child has the right to be protected from maltreatment, neglect, abuse or degradation. Law-enforcement agencies have adopted a zero-tolerance approach towards acts of women and child abuse to ensure that these vulnerable members of our society are and always feel safe.

Government aims to intensify efforts to improve the health of our people, particularly in the context of the devastating impact of the AIDS pandemic and other diseases such as tuberculosis, cancer and diabetes. Of the estimated 7,1 million people living with HIV in South Africa, more than 4,2 million of them are on antiretroviral treatment, which makes it the world's biggest treatment programme.

On environmental matters, South Africa has a number of measures in place to tackle marine pollution, which threatens our fragile ecosystems. South Africa continues to sustain and deepen international and regional relations to promote peace, security, stability, economic cooperation and integration.

As an active member of the global community, the country plays active roles within various multilateral forums.

Through the National Anti-Corruption Hotline (0800 701 701), which continues to make remarkable progress in uncovering corruption in the Public Service, government aims to ensure clean, effective and efficient governance. All senior managers in the Public Service are expected to disclose all their financial interests by 30 April of each year. One of the priorities of government is to create a strong and capable state that provides quality services such as houses, safety and security, water, education and healthcare to our people.

Following the Year of Oliver Reginald Tambo in 2017, South Africa commemorates the centenary of two other liberation struggle icons, former President Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu in 2018.

Both Tata Mandela and Mama Sisulu dedicated their lives to securing better socio-economic and political conditions in South Africa. In honour of their legacy, all South Africans should strive to promote nation-building and a socially cohesive society.

The *Official Guide to South Africa* serves to highlight government's major achievements and future plans, particularly the cherished endeavour to address the triple challenge of inequality, poverty and unemployment.

Cyril Ramaphosa

His Excellency Cyril M. Ramaphosa
President of the Republic of South Africa
October 2018

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

South Africa at a Glance

Land surface area
1 220 813 km^2

Key economic sectors
Mining, transport, energy, manufacturing, tourism and agriculture.

Population

Total	57,73 million
Male	28,2 million (49%)
Female	29,5 million (51%)

Official languages
English, isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, Afrikaans, Siswati, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Currency
Rand (ZAR) – 100 cents equals one rand.

Time
GMT +2 hours.

Government
Constitutional multiparty democracy, with three spheres – local, provincial and national government.

Capitals
Pretoria (administrative); Cape Town (legislative); Bloemfontein (judicial). The Constitutional Court is located in Johannesburg.

Provinces
Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and Western Cape.

Transportation
Excellent roads, rail and air facilities (both domestic and international). Public transport in major cities include the Gautrain between Johannesburg and Pretoria, and the Bus Rapid Transport System in major cities.

Telecommunications
World-class infrastructure. Internet access is widely available. The five mobile (cellular) networks are Vodacom, MTN, Cell C, Telkom Mobile and Virgin Mobile.

Health
Top-quality public and private healthcare is available throughout the country. Malaria precautions are necessary in some areas.

Source: *Statistics South Africa's Mid-year Population Estimates, 2018.*

For more information, visit *www.southafrica.info* and *www.gov.za*

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

History

Modern humans have lived at the southern tip of Africa for more than 100 000 years and their ancestors for some 3,3 million years.

Some 2 000 years ago, the Khoekhoen (the Hottentots of early European terminology) were pastoralists who had settled mostly along the coast, while the San (the Bushmen) were hunter-gatherers spread across the region. At this time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, spreading from the eastern lowlands to the Highveld.

At several archaeological sites there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures.

European contact

The first European settlement in southern Africa was established by the Dutch East India Company in Table Bay (Cape Town) in 1652. Created to supply passing ships with fresh produce, the colony grew rapidly as Dutch farmers settled to grow crops. Shortly after the establishment of the colony, slaves were imported from East Africa, Madagascar and the East Indies.

The first British Settlers, known as the 1820 Settlers, arrived in Algoa Bay (now Nelson Mandela Bay) on board 21 ships, the first being the Chapman. They numbered about 4 500 and included artisans, tradesmen, religious leaders, merchants, teachers, bookbinders, blacksmiths, discharged sailors and soldiers, professional men and farmers.

Conflict

From the 1770s, colonists came into contact and inevitable conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms some 800 km east of Cape Town. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms.

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

In the 1820s, the celebrated Zulu leader, Shaka, established sway over a vast area of south-east Africa. As splinter Zulu groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the region experienced a fundamental disruption. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms were established.

This temporary disruption of life on the Highveld served to facilitate the expansion northwards of the original Dutch settlers' descendants, the Boer Voortrekkers, from the 1830s.

Occupation

In 1806, Britain reoccupied the Cape. As the colony prospered, the political rights of the various races were guaranteed, with slavery being abolished in 1838.

Throughout the 1800s, the boundaries of European influence spread eastwards. From the port of Durban, Natal settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu. From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

South Africa's diamond mining industry dates back to 1867, when diamonds were discovered near Kimberley in what is today known as the Northern Cape. The Kimberley diamond fields, and later discoveries in Gauteng, the Free State, and along the Atlantic coast, emerged as major sources of gem-quality diamonds, securing South Africa's position as the world's leading producer in the mid-twentieth century.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in South Africa's history. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War was the bloodiest, longest and most expensive war Britain engaged in between 1815 and 1915. It cost more than 200 million pounds and Britain lost more than 22 000 men. The Boers lost over 34 000 people and more than 15 000 black South Africans were killed.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union. Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power. In 1921, the South African Communist Party was established at a time of heightened militancy. More discriminatory legislation was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

The rise of apartheid

In 1948, the pro-Afrikaner National Party (NP) came to power with the ideology of apartheid, an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the previous segregationist policies. While white South Africa was cementing its power, black opposition politics were evolving. In 1943, a younger, more determined political grouping came to the fore with the launch of the ANC Youth League, a development, which was to foster the leadership of people such as Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu.

Repression

In 1961, the NP Government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic after winning a whites-only referendum. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in various legislation and residential segregation was enforced.

Separate development

At a time when much of Africa was on the verge of independence, the South African Government was devising its policy of separate development, dividing the African population into artificial ethnic "nations," each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence." Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people, and vast rural slums were created in the homelands.

In 1949, the ANC adopted its Programme of Action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied a rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations.

Defiance

The Defiance Campaign of the early 1950s carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism.

Soon the mass-based organisations, including the ANC and the Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), were banned. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960 when 69 PAC anti-pass demonstrators were killed. A state of emergency was imposed, and detention without trial was introduced.

Struggle days

Leaders of the black political organisations at this time either went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle.

Top leaders still inside the country, including members of the ANC's military wing, Umkhonto we Sizwe (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963.

At the Rivonia Trial, eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge), were sentenced to life imprisonment.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. June 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. School pupils in Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings throughout the country.

Strong, legal vehicles for the democratic forces tested the State, whose response until then had been invariably heavy-handed repression.

Reform

Shaken by the scale of protest and opposition, the government embarked on a series of limited reforms in the early 1980s.

In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of parliament.

In 1986, the pass laws were scrapped. The international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause.

Mass resistance increasingly challenged the apartheid State, which resorted to intensified repression accompanied by eventual recognition that apartheid could not be sustained.

Apartheid's last days

Afrikaner élite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, with a number of businesspeople, students and academic leaders meeting publicly and privately with the ANC in exile.

Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and eventually removed.

Together with a sliding economy, increasing internal dissent and international pressure, these developments inevitably led to historic changes and the fall of apartheid.

Democratic government

South Africa held its first democratic election in April 1994 under an interim Constitution. The ANC emerged with a 62% majority. South Africa was divided into nine new provinces to replace the four existing provinces and 10 black homelands. In terms of the interim Constitution, the NP and Inkatha Freedom Party participated in a government of national unity under President Mandela, South Africa's first democratically elected president.

The second democratic election, in 1999, saw the ANC increasing its majority to a point just short of two-thirds of the total vote.

In the April 2004 election, the ANC won the national vote with 69,68% and the celebration of 10 Years of Freedom attended by heads of state and government delegations from across the world.

In 2008, Mr Kgalema Motlanthe became President following the recalling of President Thabo Mbeki. On 22 April 2009, South Africa held national and provincial elections with about 76% of registered voters casting their votes. Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009.

The following year, a significant milestone for South Africa was the hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Municipal elections were held on 18 May 2011, electing new councils for all municipalities in the country.

October 2011 saw Statistics South Africa conducting a comprehensive national census. The census, which analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality, was the third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa. The exercise saw 156 000 field staff employed to count more than 14,6 million households.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, the country started its second term as a non-permanent member of the United Nations (UN) Security Council between 2011 and 2012, serving alongside the five permanent members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, as well as elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal.

In 2011, as part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission in The Presidency finalised the draft National Development Plan: Vision for 2030. The plan is a step towards charting a new path for South Africa in dealing with the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa and the continent.

In May 2012, the Square Array Kilometre (SKA) Organisation announced that the SKA Project would be shared between South Africa and Australia, with a majority share coming to South Africa. The full dish array and the dense aperture array will be built in Africa.

In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly to the UN's 47-member Economic and Social Council.

In December 2012, President Zuma was re-elected as the president of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung, Free State with Cyril Ramaphosa elected as the party's deputy president.

In July 2013, Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka, was appointed executive director of the UN Women Entity for Gender Equality and Empowerment of Women, and Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was appointed director in the UN Development Programme's Bureau for Development Policy.

On 5 December 2013, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon Mandela died at the age of 95. Mr Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after 27 years in prison for his political activities.

He had been receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital. His body lay in state at the Union Buildings from 11 to 13 December. He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013.

South Africa celebrated 20 Years of Freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country. The Twenty Year Review, which was released in 2013, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlight that poverty, inequality and unemployment continue to negatively affect the lives of many people.

Despite progress in reducing rural poverty and increasing access to basic services in rural areas over the past 20 years, rural areas are still characterised by great poverty and inequality. As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

South Africa's fifth general elections were held on 7 May 2014. It was also the first time that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election.

The ANC won the National Assembly election (62,1%) and the official opposition Democratic Alliance (DA) won 22,2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6,4% of the vote.

The ANC also won eight of the nine provincial legislatures. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to second place in Limpopo and North West. In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51,5% to 59,4%.

In 2015, South Africa celebrated the 60th Anniversary of the Freedom Charter, which called for peace and friendship among nations. The 40th Anniversary of the 16 June 1976 Soweto Student Uprising was celebrated in 2016, along with the 20th Anniversary of the signing of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The 2016 municipal elections were held on 3 August 2016. The ANC won 53,9% of the total vote, followed by the official opposition DA with 26,9% and the EFF with 8,2%.

In 2017, South Africa celebrated five years since the launch of the National Development Plan, which outlines the goals to achieve the vision of a prosperous South Africa by tackling the triple challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality by 2030.

South Africa celebrated the Centenary of the late Oliver Reginald Tambo in 2017, under the theme: "Life and Legacy of OR Tambo". He was one of the key drivers of South Africa's liberation and one of the founding fathers of the country's constitutional democracy.

At its 54th National Conference held at Nasrec in Soweto on 18 December 2017, the ANC elected Mr Ramaphosa as its president. Following the resignation of President Zuma in February 2018, Mr Ramaphosa was elected unopposed as the fifth President of democratic South Africa by the National Assembly on 15 February 2018.

In 2018, South Africa celebrated the centenary of two Struggle stalwarts, Tata Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

South Africa's People

People

For 2018, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) estimates the mid-year population at 57,73 million, representing an overall increase of 1,55% between 2017 and 2018. Approximately 51% (approximately 29,5 million) of the population is female.

Gauteng comprises the largest share of the South African population, with approximately 14,7 million people (25,4%) living in this province. KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with 11,4 million people (19,7%) living in this province. With a population of approximately 1,23 million people (2,1%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

About 29,5% of the population is aged younger than 15 years and approximately 8,5% (4,89 million) is 60 years or older. Similar proportions of those younger than 15 years live in Gauteng (21,1%) and KwaZulu-Natal (21,0%). Of the elderly aged 60 years and older, the highest percentage 24,0% (1,18 million) reside in Gauteng. The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 and older is increasing over time.

Migration is an important demographic process in as it shapes the age structure and distribution of the provincial population. For the period 2016-2021, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 048 440 and 311 004 respectively.

Life expectancy at birth for 2018 is estimated at 61,1 years for males and 67,3 years for females. The infant mortality rate for 2018 is estimated at 36,4 per 1 000 live births.

The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13,1% among the South African population. The total number of people living with HIV is estimated at approximately 7,52 million in 2018. For adults aged 15-49 years, an estimated 19,0% of the population is HIV positive.

Registration of births

In South Africa, the right to identity – which includes nationality, name and family relations – is enshrined in Section 28 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. The Births and Deaths Act of 1992 governs the registration of births in South Africa.

The Births and Deaths Registration Act has been amended several times, with the last amendment, Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, being made in 2010. The registration of births in South Africa falls under the mandate of the Department of Home Affairs.

To better enforce the registration of births, the 2010 amendment Act mandates the registrations of births within 30 days from date of birth.

The Constitution and the Act reaffirm South Africa's commitment to Articles seven and eight of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child and the African Charter on the rights and welfare of the child.

The agreements mandate the preservation of children's rights to identity, a nationality, to a name from birth, family ties and birth registration immediately after birth. The realisation of the right to be registered is closely linked to the safeguarding of a whole range of fundamental rights, including healthcare, social security, education, participation and protection.

The primary purpose of the records derived from the civil-registration process is to create a permanent record of the birth occurrence and for the issuing of a birth certificate, which is a personal document to attest birth registration and the most visible evidence of the government's legal recognition of the child.

In essence, without a birth certificate the unregistered babies/children essentially do not legally exist.

Languages

South Africa is a multicultural society that is characterised by its rich linguistic diversity. Language is an indispensable tool that can be used to deepen democracy and also contribute to the social, cultural, intellectual, economic and political life of the South African society.

The country is multilingual with 11 official languages, each of which is guaranteed equal status. Most South Africans are multilingual and able to speak at least two or more of the official languages.

According to Stats SA's Community Survey 2016, isiZulu is the most common home language spoken by 24,6% of the population, followed by isiXhosa (17%), Afrikaans (12,1%), Sepedi (9,5%), Setswana (8,8%), and English (8,3%), Sesotho (8%), Xitsonga (4,2%), Siswati (2,6%), Tshivenda (2,4%) and isiNdebele (1,6%).

In terms of the Use of Official Languages Act in 2012, and as part of promoting social cohesion and nation-building, every government department, public entity and enterprise is expected to establish a language unit and adopt a language policy.

Religious beliefs

According to Stats SA's Community Survey 2016, the distribution of religious beliefs in South Africa is as follows:

- Christianity – 43 423 717
- Islam – 892 685
- Traditional African religion – 2 454 887
- Hinduism – 561 268
- Buddhism – 24 808
- Bahaism – 6 881
- Judaism – 49 470
- Atheism – 52 598
- Agnosticism – 32 944
- No religious affiliation/belief – 5 964 892
- Other – 1 482 210
- Do not know – 704 358.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

The mandate of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) includes value chains, inputs, production and consumption in the agriculture, forestry and fishery sectors. The department's mandate is derived from a range of legislation, including the Sea Fisheries Act of 1988, the National Forests Act of 1988, the Agricultural Products Standards Act of 1990, and the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act of 1993.

The National Development Plan sets out a broad vision of eliminating poverty and reducing inequality by 2030.

This vision is supported by Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive economic growth), outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) and Outcome 10 (protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework. The work of the DAFF is closely aligned with these outcomes.

As such, over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, the department intends to focus on improving food security; creating jobs; increasing the contribution of the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors to gross domestic product (GDP), enhancing primary animal healthcare services and enabling trade in the global economy.

The department also expects to implement the Agricultural Policy Action Plan, which focuses on value chains with high potential for food security, job creation and economic contribution; the revitalisation of the agricultural and agro-processing value chain; and Operation Phakisa.

The South African economy grew by 1.3% in 2017, exceeding National Treasury's expectation of 1.0% growth announced during the National Budget Speech in February 2017.

The strengthening in economic activity in 2017 was partly driven by the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors recovering from one of the worst droughts in recent history. In 2017, the sectors' contribution to the GDP was 2.4%.

The total volume of South African agriculture production for 2017 was estimated at 62.9 million tonnes compared to 50.8 million tonnes in 2016. This represented a 24% increase in production, which was attributed to the bumper summer crop harvest following good rainfalls during the season.

Agriculture plays an important role in the process of economic development and can contribute significantly to household food security.

According to Statistics South Africa's 2017 General Household Survey, only 15,6% of South African households were involved in agricultural production. Most crop production took place in backyard gardens, and households involved in agricultural activities were mostly engaged in the production of food.

Food production consisted of fruit and vegetables (53,4%), grains (51,8%), livestock farming (47,1%) and poultry (35,3%). Only 11,1% of the households involved in agriculture reported getting agricultural-related support from the government. Nationally, slightly more than 2,2% of the households reported receiving training and 7,0% received dipping/livestock vaccination services.

Nationally, more than three-quarters (78,5%) of households that were involved in agriculture were involved in an attempt to secure an additional source of food. Provincially, 91,5% of households in Limpopo, 81,9% of households in the Eastern Cape and 79,0% of households in Mpumalanga were engaged in agricultural activities as a way to augment their existing sources of food, while 36,7% of households in Western Cape practiced agriculture as a leisure activity.

In the Northern Cape, 21,6% of households attempted to create an additional source of income through agriculture. Since agriculture is not so common in Gauteng, many households engage in agriculture as a last option.

Only 9,9% of the households involved in agriculture reported getting agricultural-related support from the government during the year preceding the survey. The only provinces where significant support was provided for farming households were KwaZulu-Natal (13,6%), Eastern

Cape (20,3%) and Northern Cape (22,5%). Nationally, slightly less than two per cent (1,9%) of the households reported receiving training and 6,0% received dipping/ livestock vaccination services.

Improving food security

South Africa has been self-sufficient in most agriculture products with the exception of wheat, poultry and red meat. Between 50% and 60% of the country's wheat requirement is imported, due to the fact that it is cheaper to import than to produce locally.

Over the MTEF period, the department aims to promote food security through the Fetsa Tlala Programme, which forms part of the National Food and Nutrition Security Policy.

The programme focuses on assisting vulnerable households and subsistence and smallholder producers to produce their own food by ensuring that 1 million hectares of land are used for production by 2030.

Through the *Ilima/Letsema* conditional grant, which is set to receive an estimated R1.8 billion over the medium term, rural households are expected to benefit from food production initiatives, including the provision of production inputs such as fertilisers, seeds, seedlings, breeding animals, and machinery and equipment.

The comprehensive agricultural support programme aims to provide support to subsistence, smallholder and black commercial producers within areas that are strategically identified for the production of grains, livestock, horticulture and aquaculture.

Through the Ilima/Letsema conditional grant and the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme, the department expects to support 145 000 black commercial, subsistence and smallholder producers per year.

The programme will also be used for providing production inputs and farm infrastructure, and piloting the blended funding model in partnership with commercial and development funding institutions such as the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa.

In line with the outcomes of Operation Phakisa, the department aims to create and support 450 sustainable and profitable black commercial producers participating in prioritised value chains over a five-year period through the reprioritisation of funds from the comprehensive agricultural support programme grant.

The Black Producer Commercialisation Programme is intended to support investment that will unlock and enhance the output of black producers through targeted interventions. Further concessionary loans to emerging farmers will be accessed from the Micro Agricultural Finance Institution of South Africa (MAFISA), which aims to address the financial services needs of smallholder farmers and agribusinesses.

The implementation of the Agriculture Policy Action Plan and the Revitalisation of Agriculture and Agroprocessing Value Chains Policy is expected to focus on the production of high-value crops such as macadamia nuts.

Over the MTEF period, implementation is expected to extend to fruit production, the fast-tracking of poultry production, and the expansion of red meat production schemes or initiatives such as the Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo and grass-fed beef initiatives to improve animal production in rural areas.

The animal improvement scheme is dedicated to the development and improvement of livestock breeding and production among black farmers.

Creating jobs

Government has invested considerably in agriculture to create a favourable and supportive environment for the farming community. particularly subsistence and smallholder producers.

Over the medium term, the DAFF planned to create 3 481 full-time equivalent jobs through Working for Fisheries projects.

The Landcare Programme aims to promote sustainable land and soil management practices, prevent land degradation and desertification in rural areas, and contribute to job creation.

Over the MTEF period, the job-intensive programme was expected to contribute to the rehabilitation of 48 900 hectares of land through restoration and reforestation.

Junior LandCare is part of the LandCare programme which is designed to empower South African youth, particularly those in rural areas. The programme seeks to address issues of youth unemployment, skills development, school nutrition and environmental education.

In addition, over 3 300 jobs were expected to be created over the medium term for planting trees on 1 650 hectares of state-owned forests.

Foreign trade

Trade balance of agricultural products remained in positive territory as exports traded higher than imports, increasing by 12,5% in 2017 compared to 2016. The export value of agricultural products reached R126,82 billion in 2017, a decrease of 0,4% compared to 2016.

The import value of agricultural products reached R86,86 billion in 2017, a decrease of 5% compared to 2016. Agriculture's export value of R126,82 billion in 2017 was led by a decent fruit and grain production season coupled with weaker exchange rate. Imports of agricultural products in 2017 were led by processed products such as prepared foods, meat, sugar and beverages.

South Africa and the United Kingdom (UK) reached an in-principle agreement that an interim arrangement will be put in place once Britain leaves the European Union (EU), which will be based on the existing economic partnership agreement between South Africa and the EU.

There are a number of tariff rate quotas in the economic partnership agreement that South Africa must still negotiate the volume of these with the UK. The UK is South Africa's seventh biggest trading partner and EU's second biggest trading partner.

During 2017, about 30% of South Africa's fruit exports and 25% of all wines were exported to the UK. Meanwhile, the export value of agricultural products exported to the UK increased by 0,4% in 2017, from R46,3 billion in 2016 to R46,5 billion in 2017.

The import value of South Africa's agricultural products imported from the UK increased by 4,8% in 2017, from R31,7 billion in 2016 to R33,2 billion in 2017. The United Kingdom Export Fund made extra funds available for UK companies exporting to South Africa and South African companies importing from UK in order to boost trade between the two countries post-Brexit.

The African Continental Free Trade Area agreement will provide a preferential market access for agricultural, forestry and fisheries products and deepen Africa's market integration and boost intra-Africa trade. The sector will also increase its exports and accelerate the diversification of the export market from the traditional markets, which will benefit the economy of South Africa and create jobs.

South African agricultural products continue to benefit from the Free Trade Agreement of the Southern African Customs Union (SACU) and the European Free Trade Association (EFTA), which has been in force for almost ten years since May 2008. Exports of South African agricultural, forestry and sheries products increased from a value of R527 million in 2008 to a value of R712 million in 2017. The lowest value of exports was R387 million in 2011 and the highest was R796 million in 2013.

The department continues to participate in the review of the SACU-EFTA to ensure that market access for South African agricultural, forestry and fisheries products to the EFTA countries is secured.

The Southern African Development Community (SADC)-European Union (EU) Economic Partnership Agreement, which entered into force on 10 October 2016, provides for new and better market access for South Africa's fisheries and certain agricultural products such as sugar, flowers, some fruits and wines. It is under this arrangement that South Africa has, for the first time, been able to export 141 000 tons of sugar to the European Union during 2017.

The agreement provides market access for 32 South African agricultural products. It also provides for the protection of South Africa's geographic indication names for certain wines, teas and meat products in the EU market.

South African agriculture products continue to benefit from the Tripartite FTA agreement of the SADC, Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa and the East African Community.

Enhancing primary animal healthcare services

The department's primary animal healthcare programme is aimed at improving the accessibility and affordability of veterinary services, and improving awareness on animal health and welfare.

In rolling out the programme over the medium term, spending will be geared towards the recapitalisation and revitalisation of veterinary infrastructure to create an enabling environment for the deployment of newly qualified veterinarians. The department planned to deploy 150 veterinary graduates in rural areas per year over the MTEF period.

Major outbreaks of avian influenza and foot and mouth disease resulted in additional spending for the department in 2017/18. To contain the outbreaks, mobile veterinary clinics and associated equipment for laboratories were procured to strengthen veterinary public health in rural areas across all provinces.

The department received additional funding to combat the outbreak of highly pathogenic avian influenza in 2017/18.

Over the medium term, the department was expected to address biosecurity issues at South Africa's 16 land border posts; acquire two additional plant quarantine stations and two additional animal quarantine stations; and strengthen pest surveillance and control, and inspection and laboratory services.

DAFF Female Entrepreneur Awards

The 19th DAFF Female Entrepreneur Awards were held in the Eastern Cape on 23 August 2018. The awards pay tribute to the efforts and contribution by women, young females and women with disabilities for the roles they play towards ensuring food security, poverty alleviation, job creation and economic growth in the sector. The annual awards are held in partnership with Total South Africa.

The winners were as follows:

- **Best Female Entrepreneur** – Matshidiso Portia Mngomezulu
- **Best Female Worker** – Bhekisephi Banengiwe Xulu;
- **Best Subsistence Producer** – Esther Irine Nell;
- **Top Entrepreneur: Smallholder** – Leandre Elise Beatrice Mitchley;
- **Top Entrepreneur: Processing** – Matshidiso Portia Mngomezulu;
- **Top Entrepreneur: Commercial** – Maleka Pauline Dorcas;
- **Top Entrepreneur: Export Markets** – Noluthando Mbilase;
- **Minister's Special Award for Young Female Entrepreneur** – Nosiphiwo Makhapela;
- **Award for the Female Entrepreneur with Disability** – Selinah Mphedziseni Mulovhedzi.

Role players

Credit and financial assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (56%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (9%), the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (the Land

Bank) (30%), private creditors (3%), and other creditors and financial institutions (2%).

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

The mandate of the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa, as a development finance institution, is to address agricultural and rural development in South Africa.

The bank operates in the agricultural and agribusiness sectors and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act of 2002 and the Public Finance Management Act of 1999.

Its broader mandate is to promote: the equitable ownership of agricultural land, particularly by historically disadvantaged people; agrarian reform, land redistribution or development programmes for historically disadvantaged people; land access for agricultural purposes; productivity, profitability, investment and innovation in agriculture; the growth of the agricultural sectors and better use of land; rural development and job creation; and commercial agriculture and food security.

Micro Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa

MAFISA is a scheme that provides production loans to smallholder operators within the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The maximum loan size offered by MAFISA is R500 000 per client with special provision for up to R1 million for special projects.

The loans are solely for use in agriculture, forestry or fisheries enterprises. They are also for purposes of covering production input, small equipment, livestock purchase, harvesting (in the case of fruit, forestry, aquaculture and artisanal fisheries) and agro-processing.

AgriBEE Fund

The AgriBEE Fund was established to provide support to businesses owned by black South Africans to advance the transformation agenda in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The objective of the fund are to promote entry and participation of black people in the entire value chain by providing funding for equity deals, to acquire interest in existing commercially viable and sustainable enterprises and advance enterprise development through agro-processing and value-adding activities.

For the maximum loan of R5 million, applicants are required to contribute 10% to demonstrate their level of commitment. However, the Land Bank and DAFF may approve applications of more than R5 million and applicants will be required to contribute 20%.

Agri South Africa (Agri SA)

Agri SA promotes the development, profitability, stability and sustainability of agriculture in South Africa by means of its involvement and input on national and international policy, and the implementation thereof.

Agricultural Business Chamber (ABC)

The ABC is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses. Its mission is to negotiate and position for a favourable agribusiness environment where members can perform competitively and profitably.

The ABC is the only organisation that serves the broader and common business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa. The chamber facilitates considerable networking opportunities so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment and be closely involved in the legislative and policy environment on many fronts.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA renders services to its members in terms of property rights, economic issues, and safety and security.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (NAFU)

The aim of NAFU is to create a "home" for thousands of black farmers who had previously been excluded from the mainstream of agriculture. It focuses on advocacy and lobbies for access to critical resources such as land, credit, information, extension and other support services.

African Farmers' Association of South Africa (AFASA)

AFASA's aim is to promote competent and successful commercial South African farmers, and to ensure the long-term sustainability of the agricultural sector. Its values are to facilitate the development of African farmers to increase their meaningful participation in the agricultural sector.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The primary mandate of the ARC, as the main agricultural research institution in South Africa, is to conduct research and development, and effect the transfer of technology to promote agriculture and industry, contribute to a better quality of life, and facilitate and ensure the conservation of natural resources.

Forestry

Forestry is one of the sectors that have a huge potential in job creation whilst ensuring the sustainable use of natural resources.

Forest products contribute about R34.5 billion to the economy or about 0,6% of the GDP. In 2017, export value increased by 13%, from R26 to R29 billion.

This is underpinned by 1.2 million hectares of well-developed plantation forestry. Like many other sectors of the economy, this is dominated by corporate and commercial owners who own 78,9%, with small growers only owning about 3.7%.

The forestry sector is responsible for 158 400 direct employment, that is about 1.3% of South Africa's workforce. The forestry industry is at continuous risks from fire, pests' diseases and drought.

In terms of veld fires, the department was amending the National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998. These policy measures and interventions are intended to enhance the resilience of agricultural and food production systems; contribute to the reduction of the greenhouse gases emissions; intensify agricultural and forestry production while safeguarding food security and creating job opportunities.

In an effort to address the issue of competing land use between agriculture and forestry, the department developed a strategy on agro-forestry.

Agro-forestry is a practice that integrates forestry and agriculture on the same piece of land with socio-economic and environmental benefits. This strategy was expected to ensure household food security and increase the country's fibre.

National Arbor Week, which is celebrated annually in September, serves to promote awareness for the need to plant and maintain indigenous trees throughout South Africa. Every Arbor Week celebration highlights two specific trees – one common and one rare species. The theme for the 2018 Arbor Week Campaign was: "Forests and Sustainable Cities".

In 2018, the Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries took a resolution to extend Arbor Week to Arbor Month, with the campaign celebrated from 1 to 30 September annually.

For 2018 the following two tree species have been selected as trees of the year:

- *Podocarpus elongatus*: Breede River Yellowwood. This tree has been selected from the list of common species. Other yellowwood species: *P. latifolius*, *P.falcatus* and *P. henkelii*.
- *Boscia albitrunca*: Shepherd's Tree. This tree has been selected from the list of rare/ uncommon species.

Woodlands

Woodlands include those types ranging from wooded grasslands (between 5% and 10% tree canopy cover) to dense thickets (areas with over 75% tree canopy cover but which do not meet the other criteria required to be defined as natural forest).

The woodland, also known as savannas, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 to poor households annually. While natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, and plantation forestry covers less than 1,3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover about 29 million ha to 46 million ha.

Several protected tree species of the savanna, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people.

Fisheries

Both the fisheries and aquaculture sectors face competitiveness in a global market and can have unforeseen environmental and trade impact, particularly in relation to overfishing in the wild. Aquaculture also faces some constraints such as potential negative impacts on local water quality and ecosystems, depending on the type of production system.

During 2017, the export value of fisheries products decreased by 33,2% to R4,96 billion owing to sluggish economic performance and environmental issues compared with R7,43 billion realised in 2016. However, imports of fisheries products increased by 5,3% in 2017 to R5,55 billion, from R5,27 billion in 2016.

According to the Food and Agriculture Organization, in 2017, seafood demand was highly sensitive to increases in income, and it is these economic trends, combined with population growth rates, that will be the major determinants of future trade flows and consumption patterns.

The aquaculture (fish farming) sector is considered underdeveloped and as a result has been prioritised due to declining wild stocks.

Government aims to ensure the conservation, protection, rehabilitation and recovery of depleted and degraded natural resources by, among other things, developing recovery plans in prioritised areas of fish stocks such as abalone, west coast rock lobsters and deep water hake by 2018/19.

The DAFF continued to play a significant role in Operations Phakisa (Oceans Economy) with ongoing technical support being provided to aquaculture projects in Phase 1; 2 and 3. Initiative 5 of Operations Phakisa (Oceans Economy) on governance saw an increased number of successful joint operations with law-enforcement agencies, particularly in identified hot spot areas. The fishery patrol vessels were fully operational and seaworthy, and contributed to the enforcement efforts through sea-based patrols and inspections.

Aquaculture

In South Africa, marine and freshwater aquaculture presents a good opportunity to diversify fish production to satisfy local demand; contribute to food security and nutrition, job creation, economic development and rural development, and improve export opportunities. The sector also presents an opportunity to bring in the youth, women and historically disadvantaged people into the sector.

Aquaculture incorporates the breeding, trading or rearing of aquatic organisms in a controlled or selected aquatic environment for recreational, commercial or subsistence purposes. It is divided into fresh-water culture and mariculture.

Further opportunities and livelihood alternatives in the fishing communities will be created through the continued implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme in coastal and rural communities under the Working for Fisheries Programme.

Partnerships with several coastal municipalities and investors have since been formed to rehabilitate abandoned fish-processing plants in order to process fish for major retailers, which include Woolworths and WiseFoods in the United Kingdom.

The beneficiaries of these will be the right holders of the community cooperatives who will eventually own the facilities. This is part of the implementation of the Small-scale Fisheries Policy which was approved by Cabinet.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Arts and Culture

The Department of Arts and Culture (DAC) aims to contribute to sustainable economic development and enhance job creation by preserving, protecting and developing South African arts, culture and heritage to sustain a socially cohesive and democratic nation.

The mandate of the DAC is to:

- preserve, develop, protect and promote the cultural, heritage and linguistic diversity and legacy of South Africa;
- lead nation-building and social cohesion through societal transformation;
- enhance archives and records management structures and systems, and promote access to information; and
- provide leadership to the art and culture sector so as to accelerate its transformation.

Chapters 9 and 15 of the National Development Plan present a vision for South Africa that entails improved education, and a transformed and united country. This vision is expressed in terms of Outcome 1 (quality basic education) and outcome 14 (nation building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework. The work of the DAC is closely aligned with these outcomes.

Over the medium term, the department plans to focus on promoting and preserving heritage infrastructure, providing community library services, positioning the cultural and creative industries to contribute to economic growth, and facilitating social cohesion and nation-building.

Services rendered by the DAC

Some of the services rendered by the DAC include the:

1. **National Archives**, which makes archival material available to the public. Although actual access to archival documentation is free of charge, the public is charged for the reproduction of material for further use, either on film or paper. Publications are also sold, and the public is charged for the transfer of data by magnetic means.
2. **National Film, Video and Sound Archives** which collects, preserves and provides access to audio-visual records created both by government and private bodies or individuals. Its aims are to:

- preserve public and non-public audio-visual records or documents with enduringvalue, for use by the public and the State;
- make such records accessible and promote their use by the public;
- ensure the proper management and care of all public audio-visual records;
- collect non-public audio-visual and related records with enduring value of national significance, which another institution cannot more appropriately preserve;
- maintain national registers of non-public records with enduring value, and to promote cooperation and coordination between institutions having custody of such records; and
- promote the preservation and use of our national archival heritage.

3. **Bureau for Heraldry**, which registers the heraldic representations, names, special names and uniforms of individuals, associations and institutions. It also renders advice on heraldicand related matters and provides financial assistance to institutions, boards, committees orother public bodies or persons in order to promote the functional objectives of the Bureauof Heraldry.
4. **National Language Service**, which provides a translating and editing service to all government departments. It also provides policy development support relating to official language development, particularly related to the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012.

Promoting and preserving heritage infrastructure

The DAC is developing the infrastructure of heritage sites in all nine provinces to ensure that the Resistance and Liberation Heritage Route (RLHR) tells the South African story, thereby increasing the potential of attracting economic development and tourism. The liberation heritage route honours those who dedicated their lives to the struggle for liberation in South Africa. The route is expected to comprise a number of sites that express the key aspects of the South African resistance and liberation experience.

Some of the sites include the house of Charlotte Maxeke in Gauteng; the site of the Lowveld Massacre in Mpumalanga; Turfloop Campus in Limpopo; the Women Prison in Kroonstad, Free State; Mama Getrude Mpekwa Site in North West; the Sarah Baartman Heritage Site in the Eastern Cape, sites associated with the Mandela Route in the Western Cape; the site of the Mayibuye Uprising in the Northern Cape and the Matiwane Museum in KwaZulu-Natal.

The department, through the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA), has rehabilitated and refurbished the graves of Struggle stalwarts, including leaders of the liberation movements like Messrs Mapikela, Moroka, Sobukwe, Biko and others.

Construction of the National Heroes' Acre, which is part of the RLHR, is expected to commence in 2020/21.

Community library services

The community library services grant aims to transform urban and rural community library infrastructure, facilities and services, targeting previously disadvantaged communities, through a recapitalisation programme at the provincial level.

Over the medium term, the department plans to procure computers and library material for provinces to ensure the consistent delivery of services to the public.

It also plans to build 96 new libraries and upgrade 150 community libraries over the medium term period. In collaboration with the Department of Basic Education, the department also plans to build 70 dual library service points to support school curricula and enhance learning outcomes.

Cultural and creative industries

Through the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy, the DAC aims to ensure that the arts sector contributes to inclusive economic growth, job creation, artist development and urban renewal by creating employment opportunities in the arts, culture and heritage sector, thereby stimulating the broader economy.

The strategy involves activities such as arts festivals, touring ventures, public art projects, and engagement in the cultural and creative industries, through which the department can create employment.

Facilitating nation-building and social cohesion

Community conversations provide a space for people from diverse backgrounds to find levers for social cohesion within their communities towards bridging divisions.

Over the medium term, the department plans to host community conversations to provide a platform for individuals and organisations to discuss their perceived differences, and form a common understanding of what it means to be South African.

The National Social Cohesion Summit, which takes place every five years, aims to gauge progress made in achieving the resolutions adopted at the previous summit. It provides an opportunity for government, business, labour, youth formations, the media and civil-society organisations to work together to address social issues.

The DAC has implemented programmes to showcase the talents of people with disabilities. The programmes include the Zwakala Awards, designed to recognise the abilities of children with hearing disability. The event serves as a tool to create awareness of the silent minority that is cut off from the hearing world due to prejudice, and lack of tolerance and understanding.

New names of towns

The standardisation of geographical names is a process driven by the public and municipalities. It culminates in the Minister of Arts and Culture approving or rejecting a recommendation for a name change from the SAGNC. The SAGNC Act of 1998 does not provide for the Minister and the SAGNC to directly initiate name changes.

The names of towns that have been changed in the post-democratic dispensation and in more recent years include the following:

- **Limpopo:** Bela-Bela (formerly Warmbaths); Lephalale (Ellisras); Modimolle (Nylstroom); Mokopane (Potgietersrus); Musina (Messina); Polokwane (Pietersburg); Senwabarana (Bochum); Mogwadi (Dendron); Morebeng (Soekmekaar); Modjadjiskloof (Duiwelskloof) and Mookgophong (Naboomspruit).
- **Mpumalanga:** eMalahleni (Witbank); eManzana (Badplaas); KwaDukuza (Stanger); Mashishing (Lydenburg); Makhazeni (Belfast); Emgwenya (Waterval Boven); eNtokozweni (Machadodorp); Mbombela; (Nelspruit); eMkhondo (Piet Retief) and Thuli Fakude (Leandra).
- **Free State:** Mamafubedu (Petrus Steyn), Hlohlolwane (Clocolan) and Intabazwe (Harrismith).
- **Eastern Cape:** James Calata (Jamestown); Maletswai (Aliwal North); Cacadu (Lady Frere); Komani (Queenstown); Khowa (Elliot); KwaBhaca (Mount Frere); MaXesibeni (Mount Ayliff); Dikeni (Alice) and Makhanda (Grahamstown).
- **KwaZulu-Natal:** eMthonjaneni (Melmoth).
- **Gauteng:** Sophiatown (Triomf).
- **Western Cape:** Bo-Kaap (Schotchekloof).

Cultural Development

National Art Bank (NAB)

The NAB, which was launched in December 2017, at the Oliewenhuis Art Museum in Bloemfontein in the Free State, will provide the opportunity for South African artists to receive exposure locally as well as internationally. It features 54 artworks by 32 different artists from eight provinces.

The main purpose of the NAB is to procure and curate South African art works and to lease the art works to government departments, its institutions and South African embassies around the world for a minimum period of two years.

The NAB will further promote, support and supplement the income of contemporary South African artists.

Debut Fund

The Debut Fund Programme, which was launched in July 2017 in Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape, is a partnership between the DAC and the Business Association of South Africa (BASA). It is designed to create training, mentoring and funding opportunities for young artists from all disciplines making their debut appearance as professional artists in their respective art forms.

The Debut Fund allows young artists to, among other things, publish their first book, produce their first play, cut their first album or host their first exhibition. It will be linked to a mentorship programme to ensure that the aspirant arts professionals have the best possible advice and guidance to sustain their careers.

The mentorship programme will include elements such as Train-the-Trainer (which involves artist recruitment), workshops, reviewing of assignment submissions, and providing feedback to potential delegates under the guidance and supervision of the BASA in-house facilitator.

Young Patriots Programme

The Young Patriots Programme was launched in 2016 to encourage young people to participate actively in building the capacity of the arts, culture and heritage sector, and gain meaningful skills through service delivery improvement and moral regeneration initiatives, and the youth social cohesion advocates programme.

National Heritage Monument (NHM)

The work on the NHM at Groenkloof Nature Reserve in Pretoria started in 2015. The main components of the NHM is the monumental parade of more than 400 life-size sculptural bronze representations of individuals across all social spectrums who have contributed to South Africa's struggle for democracy and liberation, depicting a generational 'Long March to Freedom'.

By mid-2018, the department had provided funds for the erection of 56 statues of heroes and heroines from the pre-colonial until the anti-apartheid struggle era.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The Constitution of the Republic of South of 1996 guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for its diverse people and their cultures. These are: English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, French, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu. South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

Community art centres and other cutural organisations

There are more than 160 community art centres in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed centres.

The centres are located in different places such as craft centres, community halls and theatres.

The DAC endorses and supports programmes in needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental. In 2015, 100 community arts programmes were implemented.

Arts and culture organisations

Some of the organisations which are playing an active role in upholding the mandate of the DAC include the following:

- The **National Heritage Council** engages heritage stakeholders in public and private institutions, including the various organs of civil society, mobilises debates and builds awareness about heritage.
- The **SAHRA** is the national administrative management body for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage.
- The **National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)** facilitates opportunities for people to practice and appreciate the arts.
- The **National Film and Video Foundation** develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa.
- The **Pan South African Language Board** is a constitutional institution that promotes an awareness of multilingualism as a national resource and supports previously marginalised languages.
- The **SAGNC** is an advisory body that facilitates name changes by consulting with communities to advise the Minister of Arts and Culture.

- **Arts institutions** such as the State Theatre in Pretoria, Playhouse Company in Durban, Artscape in Cape Town, Market Theatre in Johannesburg, Performing Arts Centre of the Free State in Bloemfontein and the Windybrow Theatre in Johannesburg
- **Heritage institutions** such as Die Afrikaanse Taalmuseum en monument, Paarl; Ditsong Museums of South Africa, Pretoria; Iziko Museums, Cape Town; KwaZulu-Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg; National Museum, Bloemfontein; National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown; Robben Island Museum, Cape Town; Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg; War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein; William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley; Luthuli Museum, Stanger; Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha; Freedom Park and the Engelenburg House Art Collection.

Moral Regeneration Movement (MRM)

The objective of the MRM is to contribute to the development of a caring society by reviving the spirit of Ubuntu/Botho (humanity). It also seeks to realise the values and ideals enshrined in the Constitution.

Festivals

Some of the different arts and cultural festivals in South Africa include the following:

- The **Aardklop National Arts Festival** is held annually in October in Potchefstroom, North West. Although it is inherently Afrikaans, it is universal in character.
- **Arts Alive International Festival** in Newtown in Johannesburg provides the best in homegrown and overseas entertainment in September.
- The **Cape Town International Jazz Festival** features international and African artists. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The **Grahamstown National Arts Festival** at the end of July is the biggest annual celebration of the arts on the African continent and consists of drama, dance, theater, comedy, opera, music, jazz, visual art exhibitions, film, lectures, a craft fair and workshops, as well as a children's arts festival.
- The **Kirkwood Wildlife Festival** attracts visitors to see the game animal auction, agricultural exhibitions.
- The **Dance Umbrella** is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies. The Dance Umbrella has established itself as the main "stepping stone" for many South African choreographers who now work internationally.
- The **Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees**, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The **Moretele Park Tribute Concert** is an annual festival which is held at Moretele Park in Mamelodi, Pretoria.
- The **Cape Town Minstrel Festival** sees the minstrels taking over the streets of Cape Town (Mother City) annualy on 2 January for a parade that dates back to the mid-19th century. More than 13 000 minstrels in over 70 troupes parade throughout the city centre in their colourful garb.
- The **Mangaung African Cultural Festival** in Bloemfontein is one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival in October showcases the cream of African and international talent.
- The **National Arts Festival**, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- **Oppikoppi Music Festival** near Northam in North West offers live performances by rock, alternative and blues bands, both local and from abroad.

- The **Splashy Fen Music Festival** near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- **Standard Bank Joy of Jazz** is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- **Up the Creek** is a popular music festival held in February on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.
- The **White Mountain Folk Festiva**l in the Central Drakensberg mountain range offers great music in an awesome setting for three days in September. It features acoustic performances by some of South Africa's top folk musicians.
- **503 Music Festival** takes place twice a year in KwaMashu, KwaZulu-Natal. It is all about celebrating and thanking icons who were born and raised in the area, also bringing other national icons to the township.

Other festivals that attract both national and international visitors are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Taung Cultural Calabash in North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; Hilton Arts Festival in KwaZulu-Natal, and the One City Many Cultures in Cape Town, Western Cape.

Cultural tourism

Cultural festivals, African-cuisine projects, cultural villages, heritage routes and storytelling are areas that benefit from South Africa's booming tourism industry. Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people.

Theatre

There are over 100 active venues across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to classical opera and ballet. Performing arts institutions which receive annual transfers from the DAC include the South African State Theatre, The Playhouse Company, Artscape Theatre, The Market Theatre and the Performing Arts Council of the Free State.

Music

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue. In this industry, the department has solid foundations on which to build.

These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the Department of Basic Education, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The DAC funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC. South Africa is the 25th largest market for recorded music, with the industry employing more than 20 000 people. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwêla music of the 40s and 50s, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

South African Music Awards (SAMAs)

The winners of the 23rd annual SAMAs, held at Sun City in North West on 27 May 2017, were:

- **Best Newcomer of the Year:** Amanda Black – *Amazulu.*
- **Best Album of the Year:** Kwesta – *Dakar II*.
- **Best Duo or Group of the Year:** Black Motion – *Ya Badimo*.
- **Best Female Artist of the Year:** Amanda Black – *Amazulu*.
- **Best Male Artist of the Year:** Kwesta – *Dakar II.*
- **Record of the Year:** Nasty C – *Hell Naw*.
- **Best Album of the Year:** Kwesta – *Dakar II*.
- **Best Rock Album:** Albert Frost – *The Wakeup*.
- **Best Pop Album:** GoodLuck – *The Nature Within*.
- **Best Afro Pop Album (2017):** Vusi Nova – *Vusi Nova*.
- **Best Adult Contemporary Album:** Hugh Masekela – *No Borders.*
- **Best Maskandi Album:** Khuzani – *Inyoni yomthakathi*.
- **Best Classical Instrumental Album:** Charl du Plessis Trio – *Baroqueswing Vol.II*.
- **Best African Indigenous Gospel Album:** Living In Christ Legends – *Living In Christ Legends*.
- **Beste Kontemporere Musiek Album:** Joshua na die Reen – *Die Wereld Binne My*.
- **Best Rap Album:** Kwesta – *Darak II*.
- **Best Kwaito Album:** Dr Malinga – *Goodwill*.
- **Best Dance Album:** Black Motion – *Ya Badimo*.
- **Best Traditional Faith Music Album:** Sprit of Praise – *Spirit of Praise Vol.6*.
- **Best African Adult:** Soul Kulture – *Ngeliny'ilanga*.
- **Best Alternative Music Album:** Native Young – *Kings*.
- **Best R&B/Soul/Reggae Album:** Amanda Black – *Amazulu*.
- **Best Contemporary Faith Music Album:** Khaya Mthethwa – *The Dawn*.
- **Beste Pop Album:** ADAM – *Hoogtevrees*.
- **Best Jazz Album:** Nduduzo Makhathini with Umgidi Trio and One Voice Vocal Ensemble – *Inner Dimensions*.
- **Best Classical and/Instrumental Album:** Charl du Plessis Trio – *Baroqueswing Vol. II*.
- **Best Traditional Music Album:** Dr Thomas Chauke Na Shinyori Sisters – *Shimatsatsa No 34: Xiganga*.
- **Best African Artist:** Patoranking – *Patoranking*.
- **Best Live Audio Visual Recording:** Khaya Mthethwa – *The Dawn*.
- **Best Collaboration:** Kwesta – *Ngud'*.
- **Best Music Video of the Year:** Miss Pru – *Ameni*.
- **Best Produced Album of the Year:** Sjava – *Isina Muva*.
- **Best Engineered Album of the Year:** Arno Carstens – *Aandblom 13*.
- **Best Remix of the Year:** Vic – *Wena Wedwa* (MusicCraftMAN Mix).
- **Best Selling DVD of the Year:** Joyous Celebration – *20*.
- **Best Selling Digital Artist:** Sfiso Ncwane – *Ngipholise Nkosi*.
- **Best Selling Album of the Year:** My Hart Bly In n Taal – *Refentse*.
- **CAPASSO Best Selling Digital Download Composer's Award:** Sfiso Ncwane – *Ngipholise Nkosi*.
- **SAMRO Highest Airplay of the Year:** *Ngud* – Kwesta.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay of the Year:** *Ngud* – Kwesta.

The winners of the 24th annual SAMAs held at Sun City in North West on 2 June 2018 were:

- **Album of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold*.
- **Best Duo or Group of the Year:** Mafikizolo – *20*.
- **Best Newcomer of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold.*
- **Best Male Artist of the Year:** Prince Kaybee – *I am Music*.

- **Best Female Artist of the Year:** Shekhinah – *Rose Gold.*
- **Best Rock Album:** Fokofpolisiekar – *Selfmedikasie*.
- **Beste Pop Album:** Kurt Darren – *Laat Die Dansvloer Brand*.
- **Best Pop Album:** Tresor – The Beautiful Madness.
- **Beste Kontemporere Musiek:** Jo Black – *Skepe*.
- **Best Adult Contemporary Music:** Wouter Kellerman and Soweto Gospel Choir – *Symphonic Soweto*.
- **Best African Adult Album:** Siseko Pame – *Ilanga*.
- **Best Alternative Music Album:** Bongeziwe Mabandla – *Mangaliso*.
- **Best R&B/Soul/Reggae Album:** Afrotraction – *Relationships*.
- **Best Hip Hop Album:** Shane Eagle – *Yellow*.
- **Best Kwaito Album:** Busiswa – *Highly Flavoured.*
- **Best Dance Album:** Lady Zamar – King Zamar.
- **Best Traditional Faith Music Album:** Andile KaMajola – *Andile KaMajola Chapter 8 Sekwanele*.
- **Best Contemporary Faith Music Album:** Nqubeko Mbatha – *Heaven's Ways*.
- **Best Maskandi Album:** Abafana Baka Mgqumeni – *6 to 6*.
- **Best Jazz Album:** Nduduzo Makhathini – *Ikhambi*.
- **Best Classic Instrumental Album:** Charl du Plessis Trio – *Baroqueswing Vol. III*.
- **Best Live Audio Visual Recording:** Donald – *Red Mic Xperience*.
- **Best Collaboration:** Sun_EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **Best Music Video of the Year:** Rouge – *Arumtumtum*.
- **Best Produced Album:** Goldfish – *Late Night People*.
- **Best Engineered Album:** Mafikizolo – *20*.
- **Best Remix of the Year:** Mobi Dixon – *I got you*.
- **Best Afro Pop Album:** Mafikizolo – *20.*
- **Best African Indigenous Gospel:** Vuma Zion – *Samson Aphi Amandla Akho.*
- **Best African Artist:** Simphiwe Dana – *The Simphiwe Dana Symphony Experience*.
- **Best Selling Album of the Year:** Joyous Celebration
- – *Joyous Celebration Volume 21 Heal Our Land*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Award:** un-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **Record of the Year:** Distruction Boyz ft Benny Maverick & Dladla Mshunqisi – *Omunye*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Song of the Year:** Sun-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **SAMPRA Highest Airplay Composer's Award:** Sun-EL Musician ft Samthing Soweto – *Akanamali*.
- **CAPASSO Best Selling Digital Download Composer's Award:** Timothy Bambelela Myeni – *Joyous Celebration Volume 21*.

South African Traditional Music Achievement (SATMA) Awards

The SATMA Awards are aimed at promoting, preserving, uplifting, developing, honouring and awarding traditional musicians across racial and ethnic backgrounds. The 13th SATMA Awards ceremony took place at Mmabatho Convention Centre on 29 September 2018 and the winners were:

- **Best Song of the Year:** Izindlovukazi ZikaMageba – *Akusiwo umuthi umuntu*.
- **Best Vernacular Hip Hop Song:** Papzito – *Rain in Limpopo*.
- **Best Indigenous Comedian:** Hallo M.
- **Best Male Artist:** Majotha – *Obhuti Engibaxoshayo.*
- **Best Female Artist:** Buselaphi – *Umakhanda khanda*.
- **Best Traditional Dance Group:** Dithaga Tsa Ga Mme Halenyane – *Moulu Wa Pitse*.
- **Best Poet:** MaGcwabe Imbongi – *Izithembiso ezaphuka*.

- **Best Praise Singer:** Jessica Mbangeni – *Jessica Mbangeni Sings iGoli @ Lyric Theatre.*
- **Best Newcomer Artist:** Ezendidane – *Ikheshi Lodadooh*.
- **Best Maskandi:** Amageza Amahle – *Inhlesa nenhlama*.
- **Best Mbaqanga:** Sphamandla Masondo – *Baba Wami*.
- **Best Boeremusiek:** Die Ventertjies – *Wikkel Vingers*.
- **Best Indian:** Vernon Govender – *Bhakthi Sangeedam*.
- **Best Setswana:** Dinonyane Cultural Group – *Pitse*.
- **Best IsiNdebele:** Mhlokonywa KaBungela – *Igwabo Lakwa Pondo*.
- **Best IsiXhosa:** 100% Ncobela – *U-Level*.
- **Best Xitsonga:** Sir Jambatani 9 – *Milorho*.
- **Best Sepedi:** Seremi – *Makgaritlana*.
- Best Sesotho: Haeso Ha Ramatla No.3 – *Haeso Ha Ramatla No.3*.
- **Best TshiVenda:** Mazwale vol 3 – *Vhuhadzi ndi nama ya Thole*.
- **Best African:** Jazz Azah – *Batswadi*.
- **Best Reggae:** Black Jahman – *Peace Teacher.*
- **Best Accapella** (*Isicathamiya*): Thee Legacy – *Thee Legacy*.
- **Best Cultural Electronic Media Journalist:** Zimkhita Manqinana.
- **Best Cultural Print Media Journalist:** Lulamile Feni.
- **Traditional Radio Programme Loyal Listener:** William Mahlangu.
- **Best Traditional Community Radio DJ:** Siyaxola Sobantu.
- **Best Department of Art and Culture:** Mpumalanga.
- **Best Traditional TV Programme Show Album:** Golden Circle.
- **Best Traditional Music Air-Play Radio Station of the Year:** Ligwalagwala FM.
- **Best Traditional Music Radio Programme of the Year:** Lwesuka Lutfuli.
- **Best Traditional Radio Presenter of the Year:** Monwabisi Bangi – "Gudla".

Orchestras

The National Arts Council is responsible for funding the KwaZulu-Natal, Cape and Gauteng orchestras as well as the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups. The University of the Witwatersrand (Wits) Theatre is another popular dance venue.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from pre-historic, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise.

Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Crafts

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty alone, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything from bottles to matchboxes.

With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, and the local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

The annual National Book Week (NBW) was celebrated from 3 to 9 September 2018 and the NBW mascot, Funda Bala, visited new regions in all nine provinces of South Africa to reignite the African passion for stories told by the fireside to the beat of a drum.

Each regional community hosting a NBW event in September showcased their storytelling style and tradition, encouraging appreciation of their local talent and mother tongue. This culminated in a storytelling festival at the South African Book Fair on 7 September.

The theme for the 2018 event was #OURSTORIES, which was intended to highlight not only the fact that storytelling is deeply ingrained in African culture, but that South Africans could and should be the authors of their own stories.

The primary aims of the NBW is to:

- promote and entrench a culture of reading in South Africa particularly in schools;
- raise awareness of the critical role reading has to play in fostering socio-economic development;

- celebrate books as a means of facilitating and supporting education, culture and heritage;
- improve access to books and other forms of printed media;
- showcase and increase indigenous language publishing;
- showcase South African and African writers, publishers, booksellers and related businesses;
- raise the profile of the South African book industry with an emphasis on small, medium and micro enterprises operating in the industry;
- facilitate skills and enterprise development across the entire book industry value chain;
- form partnerships with other African countries that celebrate NBW; and
- create awareness of both NBW and the South African Book Fair through various media channels.

South African Literary Awards (SALA) 2017

The SALA aims is to pay tribute to South African writers who have distinguished themselves as ground-breaking producers and creators of literature, while it celebrates literary excellence in the depiction and sharing of South Africa's histories, value systems and philosophies and art as inscribed and preserved in all the languages of South Africa, particularly the official languages.

The 12th SALA ceremony was held on 7 November 2017 in Pretoria. The winners were:

- **First-time Published Author Award:** Moses Shimo Seletisha (*Tšhutšhumakgala*).
- **Creative Non-Fiction Award:** Dikgang Moseneke (*My Own Liberator*).
- **Sello Duiker Memorial Literary Award:** Nthikeng Mohlele – *Pleasure*.
- **Poetry Award:** Simphiwe Ali Nolutshungu (*Iingcango Zentliziyo*) and Helen Moffett (*Prunings*).
- **Chairperson's Award:** Prof Themba Christian Msimang.
- **Lifetime Achievement Literary Award:** Vusamazulu Credo Mutwa, Aletta Matshedisǒ Motimele and Etienne Van Heerden, for their body of work.
- **Posthumous Literary Award:** ǀA!kunta, !Kabbo, ≠Kasin, Dia!kwain and ǀHan≠kass'o for honouring the work of the Khoi and San.
- **Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award:** Roela Hattingh (*Kamee*).
- **Literary Journalism Award:** Don Makatile and Phakama Mbonambi, for their body of work.

SALA 2018

The 13th SALA ceremony was held in Pretoria on 6 November 2018. The winners were:

- **First-time Published Author Award:** Malebo Sephodi (*Miss Behave*).
- **Creative Non-Fiction Award:** Jurgen Schadeburg (*The Way I See It*).
- **Poetry Award:** Kelwyn Sole (*Walking, Falling*).
- **Chairperson's Award:** Peter Magubane, for his body of work.
- **Lifetime Achievement Literary Award:** Ronnie Kasrils and Hermann Giliomee, for their body of work.
- **Posthumous Literary Award:** Leon Roussow and SM Mofokeng, for their body of work.
- **Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award:** Nick Mulgrew (*The First Law of Sadness*) and Nicole Jaekel Strauss (*As In Die Mond*).
- **Literary Journalism Award:** Sam Mathe, for his body of work.
- **National Poet Laureate Prize:** Mongane Wally Serote, for his body of work.
- **Children's Literature Award:** Jaco Jacobs (*Daar's Nie 'N Krokodil In Hierdie Boek Nie/Moenie Hierdie Boek Eet Nie*).
- **Literary Translators Award:** Peter Tshobisa Mtuze and Jeff Opland (*Umoya Wembongi: Collected Poems 1922 – 1935) by John Solilo* and *Iziganeko Zesizwe: Occasional Poems (1900-1943) by S.E.K. Mqhayi*.)

Film

The South African Government recognises the significant role played by the film sector in nation-building, promoting social cohesion, reconciliation and supporting economic growth and job creation.

Government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry. The Foreign

Film and Television Production incentive aims to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production incentive aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

The South African Emerging Black Filmmakers incentive, a subprogramme of the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production Incentive, which aims to assist local emerging black filmmakers to nurture and grow them to take up big productions and thus contribute towards employment creation.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

Museums

South Africa has more than 300 museums ranging from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

The Nelson Mandela Museum in Soweto, Johannesburg had signed a partnership with Google to launch the Google Expedition that would provide a virtual tour of the museum.

In December 2018, Cabinet approved the Policy Framework on National Museums, which aims is to transform the management and operations of museums in terms of access, redress, equity, nation-building and social cohesion.

The policy proposes the clustering of museums into new management structures to achieve economies of scale by reducing the number of councils. It also provides for the grading of all the museums according to qualities, scope and significance to enable equitable funding allocations.

National Library of South Africa (NLSA)

The NLSA is the custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. Its collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

South African Library for the Blind (SALB)

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national library and information service to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

To make library services more accessible, the SALB partners with 115 public libraries providing accessible reading material and assistive devices.

Blind SA

Blind SA, located in Johannesburg, provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille.

It equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society.

This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Communications

Department of Communications (DoC)

The DoC is responsible for the national communications policy and strategy; information dissemination and publicity; and the branding of South Africa.

Improved communication and marketing will promote an informed citizenry and assist the country in promoting investments, economic growth and job creation.

The department's mandate is derived from Section 192 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which provides for the independence of broadcasting regulation in the public interest, the International Telecommunications Union and the World Intellectual Property Organisation.

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages an active citizenry that participates in the socio-economic and political life of the country. This is given expression by Outcome 14 (nation-building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), which is closely aligned with the work of the DoC.

Over the medium term, the department was expected to continue focusing on transforming the communications sector through the roll-out of the Digital Terrestrial Television (DTT) project, developing responsive communications policies and regulatory frameworks, and effectively overseeing public entity within the communications sector.

The DoC comprises the following entities: Brand South Africa (Brand SA); Film and Publication Board (FPB); Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA), Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) and the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC).

The DoC is spearheading the process of migrating broadcasting signals from analogue to digital. South Africa's national digital network coverage comprises DTT transmission coverage of 84% of the population with the remaining 16% to be covered by satellite network.

DTT is a reliable and cost-efficient means to distribute linear TV content and has many advantages over the analogue broadcasting system. One of its major advantages for communities is that it clears the analogue spectrum for the delivery of broadband mobile Internet and Wi-fi services.

To view digital TV signals on an ordinary analogue TV set, consumers will need a set-top box (STB). Government will provide about five million poor TV-owning households with free STBs. Once the migration is complete, high definition TV telecast facilities would be available, along with expanded community, FM and satellite radio services to the entire population.

South Africa was given until June 2015 to meet the International Telecommunications Union's deadline to switch off analogue transmitters as part of the broadcasting digital migration project. However, the project was delayed following a court ruling that declared part of the digital migration policy unlawful and invalid, and effectively placed the manufacture of digital terrestrial TV STBs on hold.

As a result of the delay, Sentech continued to maintain both the analogue and digital platforms until the issue was resolved. The Analogue Switch-Off Event took place in Carnarvon, Northern Cape in October 2016.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the DoC developed the *White Paper on Audio-Visual and Digital Content Policy for South Africa*, which provides enabling mechanisms to facilitate ownership of the new audio-visual digital content value chain by previously disadvantaged communities and small, medium and micro enterprises.

Brand South Africa

Brand South Africa develops and implements a proactive and coordinated international marketing and communication strategy for South Africa to contribute to job creation and poverty reduction; and to attract inward investment, trade and tourism.

Brand South Africa supports a number of initiatives to create a positive image of the country and the continent. It builds relationships, showcases South Africa's innovation, highlights its investment potential and engages with citizens on significant topics.

Film and Publication Board

The FPB regulates and controls the creation, production, possession, exhibition and distribution of certain films, interactive computer games and publications in terms of the Films and Publications Act of 1996. The board is also responsible for monitoring age restricted business premises for compliance with their licence and registration terms.

The Act recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

The board spearheads a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners about ways to avoid victimisation. Child-pornography websites can be reported by calling the board's toll-free number 0800 148 148.

To improve the ease of doing business as instructed by the NDP, the FPB successfully launched a first of its kind, Online Content Regulation (OCR) system in Africa. This system allows distributors to submit content online for classification from anywhere around the globe. It is envisaged the OCR system will result in improved turnaround times and improved service delivery to FPB's stakeholders. This system will also allow distributors to renew their licences.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

ICASA was established by the ICASA Act of 2000 to regulate the South African communications, broadcasting and postal services sectors. The regulator's mandate is defined in the Electronic Communications Act of 2005 as licensing and regulating electronic communications and broadcasting services, and in the Postal Services Act of 1998 as regulating the postal services sector.

Enabling legislation also empowers the regulator to monitor licensee compliance with licence terms and conditions, develop regulations for the three sectors, plan and manage the radio frequency spectrum, and protect consumers in relation to these services.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA promotes media development and diversity to ensure that all citizens can access information in a language of their choice; and to transform media access, ownership and control patterns in South Africa. Since 1994 the footprint of community media has grown significantly and has begun to emerge as an alternative voice to the mainstream media. Community media provide information to many South Africans who do not have access to the mainstream media.

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC is by far the largest and most influential broadcaster in South Africa in terms of reach, size, overall audience figures, and share of the advertising market. Nearly 28 million radio listeners in South Africa tune into one of the SABC's 18 radio stations and the SABC's three free-to-air (FTA) TV channels attract more than 21 million adult viewers each day.

The stations cater for the country's 11 official languages, as well as the iXun and Khwe languages, and four TV channels, which include the 24-hour news channel.

The SABC has developed editorial policies which guide and give direction to the corporation's public broadcasting mandate and licence conditions, as set by ICASA and the provisions of the Broadcasting Act of 1999.

Government Communication and Information System

The mandate of the GCIS is derived from Section 195(g) of the Constitution, which stipulates that the public should be provided with information that is timely, accurate and accessible.

This is in support of the constitutional principles of freedom of expression, transparency and openness of government.The department is responsible for providing strategic leadership and coordinating government communication to ensure that the public are informed and have access to government programmes and policies that benefit them.

Chapter 15 of the NDP emphasises the need to unite all South Africans around a common goal, ensure that citizens are active in their own development, and build a capable and developmental state.

This is given expression by Outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development oriented public service) and Outcome 14 (nation building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF, with which the work of the GCIS is closely aligned.

The department provides information about government policies, plans, programmes and activities to the public.

Among other things, the GCIS is responsible for maintaining government's website (www.gov.za), which provides general information about government.

Among other products, the GCIS publishes the *South Africa Yearbook*, *Official Guide to South Africa*, *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper, Public Sector Manager magazine and My District Today newsletter. It is also responsible for the South African Government News Agency, SAnews.gov.za.

The Thusong Service Centre Programme enables communities to access government information and services.

Thusong Service Centres are one-stop centres providing integrated services and information from government and other civil society groups, to communities close to where they live as part of a comprehensive strategy to better their lives.

They also also enable communities to access opportunities offered by other civil-society groups such as businesses, non-governmental organisations and parastatals.

The GCIS also gathers public opinion, research and analysis of media coverage to understand the communications environment and to inform government messages.

The department provides media bulk-buying services, which are designed to reduce the cost to government on advertising; facilitate a rapid response mechanism to hasten government's response to issues arising in the media; and provide media production services to support other government departments.

The GCIS was expected to assist the Independent Electoral Commission in driving campaigns around voter registration and Department of Home Affairs on ensuring that citizens have the correct documents to vote in the 2019 General Elections.

In August 2018, Cabinet approved the Government Communication Policy, which seeks to establish norms and standards to professionalise and strengthen the government communication system. This applies to communication coordination and use of alternative media across the three spheres of government and across government departments at a national level.

Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services (DTPS)

The DTPS is mandated to develop Information and Communications Technology (ICT) policies and to ensure the development of robust, reliable, secure and affordable ICT infrastructure. The department also contributes to building an ICT skills base in the country to ensure equitable prosperity and global competitiveness.

The NDP envisages that by 2030, the ICT sector will underpin the development of a dynamic and connected information society, and a vibrant knowledge economy that is inclusive and prosperous. Drawing from this vision, the DTPS contributes to Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF by ensuring that ICT infrastructure and services are accessible, affordable, robust, reliable and secure. Over the medium term, the department will expand and modernise ICT infrastructure by implementing the South Africa Connect broadband policy, coordinating the migration to digital broadcasting, and implementing the legislative framework stemming from the 2016 *National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*.

In 2018, the DTPS, through Broadband Infraco and State Information Technology Agency (SITA), started connecting government facilities in the eight districts which have been identified for the rollout of SA Connect, the country's broadband plan and strategy.

In 2017, the department gazetted the Electronic Communications Amendment Act for public comment, which among other things, creates the legislative environment for the establishment of the Wireless Open Access Network (WOAN). It also established the National Rapid Deployment Coordinating Centre to assist network providers by reducing time and costs for deploying their telecommunication infrastructure.

Cabinet approved the National e-Strategy, the e-Government Strategy and the ICT SMME Development Strategy, which aims to accelerate the development, growth, and sustainability of small and medium enterprises in the ICT sector. This is meant to stimulate the creation of jobs and for greater economic inclusion, while also aiming to enhance entrepreneurship, increase the usage of ICT tools for all small businesses, and to improve their profitability and competitiveness.

Cabinet approved the framework for the establishment of a State ICT Infrastructure Company and the State IT Company. The State ICT Infrastructure Company will be formed through the merger of Sentech and Broadband Infraco.

The State IT Company will be formed through the reconfiguration of SITA. The department will also facilitate and coordinate the implementation of the national e-strategy to realise the eservices programme. Finalising a national e-strategy will plan for the digital transformation of South Africa to achieve the ideals of the NDP by prioritising sectoral electronic services such as e-health, e-agriculture and e-education.

The six state-owned enterprises under the DTPS are the South African Post Office (SAPO), Sentech; National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA); Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA); .za.Domain Name Authority (ZADNA); Universal Service and Access Fund (USAF); Broadband Infraco and SITA.

South African Post Office

The SAPO provides postal and related services to the public. Post offices offer South Africans a convenient place to accept and deliver cash-on-delivery items, which is a very important service in rural communities where some people shop from catalogues.

In addition, more than a million South Africans walk through the doors of post offices near where they live to access their social grants.

Post offices also offer services that include enabling South Africans to renew their vehicle registration, and pay their municipal accounts and TV licences.

The Philatelic Services of the SAPO is responsible for producing South Africa's postage stamps and other stamp-related products. Over the years, many of them have become valuable collector's items.

The Postbank caters for the banking needs of the unbanked majority, thus facilitating their inclusion into the economic mainstream and expanding the existing range of banking services.

With effect from 30 September 2018, the SAPO took over the payment of social grants. The new gold card is safer and does not allow for illegal deductions and fraudulent transactions to take place. It is designed to protect social grants beneficiaries from illegal deductions for things such as electricity, airtime and loans. The only deductions that are permitted on the new gold South African Social Security Agency card are for funeral policies on non-child grants, which should also not be more than 10% of the total grant.

Sentech

Sentech is mandated to provide common carrier broadcasting signal distribution services to licensed broadcasters in South Africa. The company's mandate has since been expanded to provide international voice services and common carrier multimedia services in accordance with government's imperative to liberalise the telecommunications sector.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa

NEMISA offers national certificates and short courses in the areas of television production, animation and radio production. The institute's programmes are structured to enhance the market readiness of students in a wide range of broadcasting disciplines.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa

The sole mandate of USAASA is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications services, electronic communications network services and broadcasting services.

By mid-2018, USAASA intended to engage in a process of developing a national strategy on Universal Access and Universal Service that would ensure appropriate identification of consumer needs in rural, underdeveloped, under-serviced and un-serviced areas. It would also consider their levels of affordability and propose a suitable model to ensure that both basic and advanced ICT services are available, accessible and affordable to all the people of South Africa.

.za.Domain Name Authority

ZADNA is a non-profit company that manages and regulates the .za namespace. It is accountable to the DTPS, but does not receive government funding.

Universal Service and Access Fund

The USAF's sole mandate is to make payments for subsidies towards the provision of ICT equipment and services, and construct and extend electronic communication and broadcasting networks for needy persons in underserviced areas. The fund is managed by USAASA and is financed by contributions from all telecommunications licensees except community broadcasting service licensees.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco is intended to improve market efficiency in the long distance connectivity segment by increasing available long distance network infrastructure. It will also avail capacity to stimulate private sector innovation in telecommunications services and content offerings.

Broadband Infraco provides long distance national and international connectivity to licensed private sector partners, licence-exempt projects of national importance and to previously underserviced areas.

State Information Technology Agency

SITA consolidates and coordinates the State's information technology (IT) resources in order to achieve cost savings through scale, increase delivery capabilities and enhance interoperability.

SITA is committed to leveraging IT as a strategic resource for government, managing the IT procurement and delivery process to ensure that government gets value for money. The agency also uses IT to support the delivery of e-Government services to all citizens.

It serves as the IT business for the largest employer and consumer of IT products and services in South Africa – the Government.

Communication platforms

Radio

A significant number of South Africans still depend solely on radio as a source of information. The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations. Fifteen of these are dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting and include 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa; a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan of the Northern Cape. The radio stations reach 77,3% of the Adult population with 29,5 million listeners.

The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio – 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM. Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese. SABC Radio has more than 26 million listeners weekly in South Africa.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- 94.7 Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda 94.2
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Capricorn FM
- Power FM
- Radio KFM.

Stations such as Jacaranda 94.2, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster. Many of South Africa's radio stations are available online.

Television

TV remains the medium of choice for most South Africans. The SABC's TV network comprises three FTA TV channels. SABC TV has a weekly audience of 30,248 million (86,6% of adults watch SABC TV in South Africa).

South African TV is broadcast in all 11 official languages and also in Sign Language. The SABC also broadcasts a 24-hour news channel on DStv (Channel 404).

The public broadcaster's three terrestrial TV channels attract an average 27.1 million South

Africans in a typical month. A total of 17 of the Top 20 terrestrial TV programmes in South Africa are carried on SABC channels.

Community TV
Soweto TV was the first community TV station to obtain a seven-year broadcasting licence from ICASA.
There are five stations operational in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay.

FTA TV
e.tv is South Africa's first private FTA TV channel. It is the largest English-medium channel in the country and the second largest overall. e.tv also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries.

Satellite broadcasting
eNews Channel Africa (eNCA) is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour TV news channel on the DStv platform (Channel 403).

The 24-hour news service is broadcast live in the UK to over 10,5 million subscribers on the Sky digital satellite platform.

eNCA provides live news bulletins to nearly three million South African viewers each night on e.tv (in English, isiZulu and Sesotho) and to more than 200 000 Afrikaans viewers on kykNET. The SABC's also has its own 24-hour news channel on DStv (Channel 404).

Internet
The South African Internet user population passed the 20-million mark for the first time in 2016, reaching 21 million, and was expected to grow to at least 22.5 million in 2017.

This is the main finding of of the Internet Access in South Africa 2017 study, released in July 2017 by World Wide Worx.

The report reveals that the single most common use of the Internet among South African adults is communication, reported by almost a third (31%) of respondents, followed by social networking (24,9%) and information (23,7%), both reported by almost a quarter of respondents. Only then comes entertainment at 22,1%.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) 2017, just over six-tenths of South African households (61,8%) had at least one member who used the Internet either at home, their places of work or study or at Internet cafés.

Access to the Internet at home was highest among households in Western Cape (25,7%) and Gauteng (16,5%), and lowest in Limpopo (2,2%) and Eastern Cape (3,5%).

Social media
The SA Social Media Landscape 2019 report, released on 15 October 2018 by Ornico, the Brand Intelligence organisation, and World Wide Worx, shows that across age groups, the racial divide and lifestyle measures, there is little difference in Facebook penetration.

The data highlights the impact of the launch in South Africa of Facebook Lite in 2015, and some network operators allowing it to be used without data charges being incurred.

This meant a massive uptake of Facebook Messenger as a cheap or free means of sending instant messages, and led to Facebook spreading evenly among all population segments.

The Social Media Landscape report shows that there are now 21-million Facebook users in South Africa, representing 28% of the population. This is up from 19-million users a year ago.

The study reveals that Instagram grew a massive 73% , from 3.8 million to 6.6 million in 2017.

This is largely thanks to the intense usage of the photo-sharing platform by media, music and fashion personalities.

The top 25 most followed South Africans on Instagram include only one individual from outside these ranks: cricketer AB de Villiers, who enjoys a massive fan base in India, takes the number one position of South Africans on Instagram, with no less than 6.4-million followers.

The rapid growth brings Instagram into the Big Five of social networks in South Africa, behind Facebook, YouTube, Twitter and LinkedIn. Although Twitter growth has flattened – both globally and in South Africa – it still picked up another 300 000 new followers in 2017 to take it to 8.3-milion users.

By mid-2018, it was estimated that there were over nine million YouTube users in South Africa. The most popular YouTube channel in the country, for the fifth year running, remains Kruger Sightings, the wildlife video-sharing community started by then schoolboy Nadav Ossendryver when he was 15. It has passed the million subscriber mark and has had around 800-million views.

LinkedIn, which is intended for business and career networking, now has 6.8-million users in South Africa, up 11 % from 2017.

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

Identity fraud, stalking, online child pornography and terrorism have become daily occurrences that threaten communities' ability to enjoy the benefits of new technologies.

The Cybersecurity Hub, pooling public and private sector threat information is responsible for processing and disseminating information to relevant stakeholders in the industry and civil society.

Telecommunications

South Africa has five major mobile operators, namely CellC, MTN, Vodacom, Telkom Mobile and Virgin Mobile.

According to Stats SA's GHS 2017, nationally, only 3,5% of households did not have access to either landlines or cellular phones in 2017. Inadequate access to telephones was most common in Northern Cape (10,0%) and Eastern Cape (7,1%).

Nationally, 88,2% of households had access to at least one cellular phone, while 8,2% of households had access to both a landline and a cellular phone.

Only 0,1% of households had only a landline. However, access to these means of communication differed by province. Households in historically rural provinces such as Mpumalanga (95,0%) and Limpopo (94,4%) were very reliant on the more accessible cellular telephones than landlines.

By contrast, a combination of both cellular phones and landlines in households were most prevalent in the more affluent provinces, namely Western Cape (19,6%) and Gauteng (10,2%).

The media

South Africa has a vibrant and independent media, with print, broadcast and online offerings.

Print

Newspapers

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses. These include Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Tiso Blackstar Group. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness

Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; RamsayMedia, and Kagiso Media.

Magazines

According to figures released by the Audit Bureau of Circulations of South Africa, there has been a steady decline in magazine circulation in South Africa over the past months, with only a handful of commercial magazines achieving a steady increase in circulation.

Media organisations and role players

The non-profit-making Print and Digital Media South Africa (PDMSA) was originally formed to bring together under one roof publishers of diverse print genres.

The PDMSA recognised the advantages of extending its footprint online by extending its membership to include digital media publications. By the end of 2018, the PDMSA membership included more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles that cater for four different language groups.

The members include Caxton and CTP; Independent Newspapers; Media24; *Mail & Guardian*, and the Association of Independent Publishers, the latter which represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

Tiso Blackstar Group – whose stable includes the *Sunday Times*, *Sowetan*, *Financial Mail and The Herald* – is the largest, national English-language publishing group in South Africa and the country's second-largest digital publisher.

It also owns the largest music and independent film catalogue in Africa; TV channels, TV production facilities and radio stations in Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria and South Africa.

The **South African National Editors' Forum** (SANEF) was formed at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and senior journalism educators and trainers.

The **Forum of Journalists for Transformation** addresses issues that directly affect its members.

The **Press Council**, the **Press Ombud** and the **Appeals Panel** are an independent co-regulatory mechanism set up by the print and online media to provide impartial, expeditious and cost-effective adjudication to settle disputes between newspapers, magazines and online publications, on the one hand, and members of the public, on the other, over the editorial content of publications.

The **Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI)** was formed to defend freedom of expression, to oppose censorship, to promote access to information and knowledge, and to promote media diversity. The FXI is the leading organisation on issues of freedom of expression and access to information as enshrined in section 16 of the South African Constitution.

The **Forum of Community Journalists** is an independent, non-profit, non-racial and voluntary organisation striving to promote and express the interests of all journalists employed on a permanent or freelance basis at regional community newspapers, magazines and online community publications in South Africa.

The **Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa** is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

Media Monitoring Africa is a non-profit organisation that acts in a watchdog role to promote ethical and fair journalism that supports human rights.

The **National Community Radio Forum** lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents'

Association of Southern Africa; Printing Industries Federation of South Africa; South African Typographical Union; Specialist Press Association; South African Guild of Motoring Journalists; Professional Photographers of South Africa; Media Institute of Southern Africa; Publishers' Association of South Africa, and various press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

Local and international news agencies based in South Africa include:

- African News Agency
- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Media awards

Some of South Africa's media awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Vodacom Journalist of the Year Awards
- South African Breweries (SAB) Environmental Media and Environmentalist of the Year Awards
- SAB Sports Media Awards
- Sanlam Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- SANEF's Nat Nakasa Award
- Local Media Excellence Awards
- Liberty Radio Awards
- Isu Elihle Awards
- Standard Bank Sikuvile Awards
- New Generation Social & Digital Media Awards.

Advertising awards

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. The Loeries® are Africa and the Middle East's premiere initiative that recognises, rewards, inspires and fosters creative excellence in the brand communication industry.

The 40th Annual Loerie Awards ceremony was held at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre in August 2018.

A total to 287 Loeries were awarded across 14 categories, including six Grands Prix, 31 Golds, 69 Silvers, 113 Bronzes, 18 Craft Golds and 50 Craft Certificates.

More than 2 500 entries were received, with 15% of entries from outside South Africa. A total of 700 brands were represented by 265 agencies from 15 countries across Africa and the Middle East.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Economy and Finance

The South African economy grew by 2,2% quarter-on-quarter (seasonally adjusted and annualised) in the third quarter of 2018, bringing to an end the country's second recession since 1994, according to Statistics South Africa.

Higher contributions to growth in a number of industries – most notably in manufacturing, transport as well as finance and business services – were enough to lift economic growth back into positive territory.

The rise in economic activity in the third quarter follows two consecutive quarters of negative growth, which is a widely recognised indicator of recession. The economy slumped by 2,6% in the first quarter of 2018 and a further 0,4%1 in the second quarter.

Manufacturing was the main driver of positive growth in the third quarter. The industry grew by 7,5%2, largely as a result of increased production of basic iron and steel, metal products and machinery; wood and paper; petroleum products; and motor vehicles. This is the largest jump in manufacturing production since the second quarter of 2016.

After contracting in the second quarter, the transport, storage and communication industry rebounded by 5,7% in the third quarter, making it the second largest contributor to overall growth. An increase in freight transportation underpinned the rise in activity. This is the largest quarter-on-quarter increase for transport, storage and communication since the third quarter of 2007.

The finance, real estate and business services industry was another strong supporter of gross domestic product growth, edging up by 2,3%. It was specifically the activities related to financial intermediation, insurance and real estate which performed better in the third quarter, contributing to the rise.

The agriculture industry bounced back from two consecutive quarters of negative growth to record a 6,5% rise in the third quarter. Strong growth in the production of field crops, horticultural cultivation and animal products contributed to the rebound. The mining industry was the biggest detractor from economic growth, declining by 8,8%. Lower production levels were recorded for platinum group metals, iron ore, gold, copper and nickel.

The country's socio-economic roadmap, the National Development Plan (NDP), recognises that faster, broad-based growth is needed to transform the economy, create jobs, and reduce poverty and inequality by 2030.

Government continues to prioritise infrastructure investment to ease bottlenecks and raise the economy's potential growth rate.

President Cyril Ramaphosa's Economic Stimulus and Recovery Plan aims to, among other things, ignite economic activity, restore investor confidence, prevent further job losses and create much-needed jobs. The plan seeks to achieve the following:

- Implementation of growth enhancing economic reforms.
- Reprioritisation of public spending to support job creation.
- Establishment of an Infrastructure Fund.
- Addressing urgent and pressing matters in education and health.
- Investing in municipal social infrastructure improvement.

Over the period ahead, government is focusing on reforms that support economic growth, reduce inflationary pressures and improve service delivery.

Encouraging private-sector investment

Government's initiatives that are underway to expand private-sector investment to improve productive capacity and grow the economy include:

- **Easing the regulatory burden and making it easier to invest:** InvestSA has set up a one-stop shop to help investors with the procedures required to start up and run a business.
- **Reducing time spent on compliance and paperwork.** As a result of increased automation at the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission, it now takes less than a day to

register a firm. Title deeds are now available within seven days at the Deeds Office. And the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has streamlined contract enforcement, introducing court mediation to reduce legal costs.
- **Strengthening competition law.** Sections of the Competition Amendment Act that came into effect earlier this year make it a criminal offence for directors or managers of a firm to collude with their competitors to fix prices or collude in tenders. This should reduce prices and increase market access.
- **Enhancing the environment for small business.** The Department of Small Business Development (DSBD) is updating legislation to improve support for small businesses. Government has targeted support to small firms, and is encouraging large businesses to contract more work from small companies.

From 4 to 5 October 2018, government, business, labour and community stakeholders took part in the **Jobs Summit** in Johannesburg convened by the National Economic Development and Labour Council to identify solutions to retain and create much-needed jobs.

The two-day summit adopted a groundbreaking Framework Agreement to prevent further job losses, support companies in distress and create an estimated 275 000 jobs annually.

From 25 to 27 October 2018, government hosted the inaugural **South Africa Investment Conference**, as part of its broad and targeted strategy of stimulating economic growth and creating jobs.

The conference generated announcements of investment of over R290 billion from companies in mining, forestry, manufacturing, telecommunications, transport, energy, agro-processing, consumer goods, pharmaceuticals, infrastructure, financial services, energy, ICT and water. Prominent among these were the themes of value addition, beneficiation, innovation and entrepreneurship.

National Minimum Wage (NMW)

In December 2018, President Ramaphosa announced that the NMW will be implemented from 1 January 2019. The NMW of R20 an hour represents a marked increase in income for more than six million workers – or 47% of South Africa's labour force – who earn less than R20 an hour. This rate is subject to future adjustments in terms of the NMW Act of 2018.

In February 2017, representatives of government, business, the community sector and two of the three labour federations represented at the National Economic Development and Labour Council signed agreements on measures to strengthen labour stability and collective bargaining and on modalities for the introduction of a NMW.

The social partners reached agreement on modalities for the introduction of a NMW of R20 an hour. This translates to about R3 500 for those working 40 hours per week and about R3 900 for those who work for 45 hours per week.

The NMW is expected to significantly improve the lives of millions of low-paid workers and begin to address the challenge of wage inequality.

National Treasury

National Treasury's legislative mandate is based on section 216(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which calls for the establishment of a national treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of the country's public finances. This role is further elaborated in the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA) of 1999. The department is mandated to:
- promote national government's fiscal policy and the coordination of macroeconomic policy
- ensure the stability and soundness of the financial system and financial services

- coordinate intergovernmental financial and fiscal relations
- manage the budget preparation process
- enforce transparency and effective management of national revenue and expenditure, assets and liabilities, public entities, and constitutional institutions.

The NDP recognises that faster, broad-based growth is needed to transform the economy, create jobs, and reduce poverty and inequality in South Africa. Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive economic growth) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) gives expression to this vision, with National Treasury's work contributing to its realisation.

Over the medium term, the Treasury will continue prioritising infrastructure investment to ease bottlenecks and raise the economy's potential growth rate. The department will also continue working on preventing South Africa's credit rating from being downgraded to sub-investment grade.

The department's strategic focus over the medium term period will continue to be on managing future spending growth and fiscal risk; reviewing tax policy; supporting sustainable employment; supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities; making government procurement more efficient; strengthening government financial management; strengthening the regulation of the financial sector; regional and international cooperation; and managing government's assets and liabilities.

Entities under National Treasury

- The **Accounting Standards Board** develops uniform standards of generally recognised accounting practice for all spheres of government. It also promotes transparency in and the effective management of revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the entities to which the standards apply.
- The **Cooperative Banks Development Agency's** mandate is to provide for the registration and supervision of deposit-taking financial services cooperatives, and savings and credit cooperatives, collectively referred to as cooperative financial institutions. The agency also facilitates, promotes and funds the education and training of these institutions.
- The **Financial and Fiscal Commission's** legislative mandate is to advise the relevant legislative authorities on the financial and fiscal requirements for the national, provincial and local spheres of government.
- The **Financial Intelligence Centre's** mandate is, among other things, to identify the proceeds of unlawful activities, combat money-laundering activities, combat the financing of terrorist and related activities, exchange information with law-enforcement and other local and international agencies.
- The **Financial Services Board (FSB)** is an independent institution established by statute to oversee the South African non-banking financial services industry in the public interest.
- The **Government Pensions Administration Agency** provides pensions administration services to the Government Employees Pension Fund.
- The **Government Technical Advisory Centre** is mandated to assist organs of state in building their capacity for efficient, effective and transparent financial management.
- The **Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors** develops and maintains auditing and ethical standards that are internationally comparable, provides an appropriate framework for the education and training of properly qualified auditors, inspects and reviews the work of registered auditors, and investigates and takes appropriate action against registered auditors who do not comply with standards and are guilty of improper conduct.
- The **Office of the Ombud for Financial Services Providers** is mandated to consider and dispose of complaints against financial services providers, primarily intermediaries selling investment products.
- The **Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator** investigates and determines complaints lodged in terms of the Pension Funds Act of 1956. The office ensures a procedurally fair,

economical and expeditious resolution of complaints in terms of the Act.
- The **Public Investment Corporation** is one of the largest investment managers in Africa, managing assets worth more than R1,7 trillion. The corporation is mandated to invest funds on behalf of its clients, based on the investment mandates as agreed on with each client and approved by the FSB. The corporation's clients are public-sector entities, most of which are pension, provident, social security, development and guardian funds.
- **South African Airways** is South Arica's national air carrier, which operates a full service network in the international, regional and domestic markets.
- The **South African Special Risks Insurance Association** is mandated to support the insurance industry by providing cover for special risks such as riots, strikes, political unrest, terrorist attacks, civil commotion, public disorder and labour disturbances.

South African Reserve Bank (SARB)

The primary purpose of the SARB is to achieve and maintain price stability in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth in South Africa. Together with other institutions, it also plays a pivotal role in ensuring financial stability.

The primary function of the SARB, as the country's central bank, is to protect the value of South Africa's currency. In discharging this role, it takes responsibility for:
- ensuring that the South African money, banking and financial system as a whole is sound, meets the requirements of the community and keeps abreast of international developments;
- assisting the South African Government, as well as other members of the economic community of southern Africa, with data relevant to the formulation and implementation of macroeconomic policy;
- informing the South African community and all stakeholders abroad about monetary policy and the South African economic situation.

The SARB is governed by the SARB Act of 1989, as amended. It has more than 600 shareholders.

South African Revenue Service (SARS)

SARS is an organ of state outside the Public Service that aims to provide a world-class, efficient, transparent and taxpayer-centred service, ensuring optimum and equitable revenue collection. Its main functions are:
- collecting and administering all national taxes, duties and levies imposed under national legislation;
- collecting revenue that may be imposed under any other legislation, as agreed upon between SARS and an organ of state or institution entitled to the revenue
- advising the Minister of Finance on revenue
- facilitating trade
- providing protection against the illegal import and export of goods
- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on matters concerning control over the import, export, manufacture, movement, storage or use of certain goods.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil a revenue-raising function. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy. These instruments are then administered by SARS.

A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of various tax Acts administered by SARS, excluding Customs, was established by the Tax Administration Act of 2011, which commenced on 1 October 2012. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law. It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements, and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in different tax Acts administered by SARS.

The Act provides for common procedures across the various tax Acts, and strives for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of SARS and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

Office of the Tax Ombud

The function of the Office of the Tax Ombud is to provide taxpayers with an impartial and low-cost mechanism to resolve service, procedural or administrative difficulties that taxpayers have not been able to resolve through SARS's complaints management channels.

South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based income tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. The liability of taxpayers is determined subject to the provisions of International Agreements for the Avoidance of Double Taxation.

Tax is levied on taxable income, which is calculated as gross income, less exemptions and permissible deductions, plus the applicable percentage of the net capital gain, for the year.

The main tax revenue sources are income tax (individuals, trusts and companies), value-added tax (VAT) and customs and excise duties. Relief is often available from any consumption-based tax when the goods are exported under certain terms and conditions.

Company income tax

Companies are subject to a flat tax rate, which is 28% of taxable income. Exceptions to the rule are the lower, progressive tax rates that apply to small and micro- businesses, as well as the reduced rate that applies to companies operating in designated Special Economic Zones.

Value-added tax

With effect from April 2018, VAT is levied at 15% on the supply of all goods and services by VAT vendors (certain supplies are zero-rated). The quoted or displayed price of goods and services must be VAT-inclusive. A person who supplies goods or services is liable to register for VAT, if the income earned is more than R1 million in a 12-month period, or when there is a reasonable expectation that the income will exceed this amount.

A person can also register voluntarily for VAT, if the income earned from supplying goods or services for 12 months exceeded R50 000.

Government has made necessary provisions to zero rate a number of products for VAT, including brown bread, maize meal, samp, milk, rice, vegetables, eggs and fruits.

In 2018, government set up an Independent Panel of Experts to review the current list of zero-rated VAT items.

The panel's report recommended the following additional items be included in the basket of zero rated goods:

- White bread, bread flour and cake flour
- Sanitary products
- School uniforms
- Nappies, including cloth and adult nappies.

Personal income tax (PIT)

PIT mainly focuses on the taxation of an individual's income. The main contributor to PIT is employment income from salary earners, and income generated from sole-proprietor activities. The tax rate applicable to PIT-related taxable income is progressive, ranging from marginal rates of 18% to 41%.

As a means of collecting income tax from salary and wage income, a mechanism known as Pay-As-You-Earn is in operation that enables employers to withhold tax due to SARS from employees and pay this over to SARS on a monthly basis, and reconciled biannually.

Excise duty

Excise duty is levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents, such as tobacco and liquor products, and as an ad valorem duty on cosmetics, audio-visual equipment and motor cars.

Environmental levy

The four main areas of levies in this category are plastic bags levy, electricity generation levy, electric filament levy and motor vehicle carbon dioxide emission levy.

Fuel levy

The fuel levy is a consumption-based levy that is levied on petroleum products that are imported or manufactured in South Africa.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is payable on the acquisition of property. Property costing less than R900 000 attracts no duty. A 3% rate applies to properties costing between R900 001 and R1,25 million.

In respect of property with a value between R1,25 million and R1,75 million, the duty is R10 500 plus 6% of the value above R1,25 million. In respect of properties costing between R1,75 million and R2,25 million, the duty is R40 500 plus a rate of 8% of the value exceeding R1,75 million.

For property between R2,25 million and R10 million, the duty is R80 500 plus a rate of 11% of the value exceeding R2,25 million.

For a property above R10 million, the duty is R933 000 plus 13% of the value exceeding R10 million.

Estate duty

Estate duty is levied at a flat rate of 20% on residents' property and non-residents' South African property. A basic deduction of R3,5 million is allowed in the determination of an estate's liability for estate duty, as well as deductions for liabilities, bequests to public benefit organisations and property accruing to a surviving spouse.

Dividends tax

Dividends tax is a final tax at a rate of 20% on dividends paid by resident companies and by non-resident companies in respect of shares listed on the JSE. Dividends are tax exempt if the beneficial owner of the dividend is a South African company, retirement fund or other exempt person.

Non-resident beneficial owners of dividends may benefit from reduced tax rates in limited circumstances. The tax is to be withheld by companies paying the taxable dividends or by regulated intermediaries in the case of dividends on listed shares. The tax on dividends in kind (other than in cash) is payable and is borne by the company that declares and pays the dividend.

Securities transfer tax
Securities transfer tax is levied at a rate of 0,25% on the transfer of listed or unlisted securities. Securities consist of shares in companies or members' interests in close corporations.

Skills-development levy
Affected employers contribute to a Skills Development Fund that is used for employee training and skills development. This skills development levy is payable by employers at a rate of 1% of the total remuneration paid to employees. Employers paying annual remuneration of less than R500 000 are exempt from the payment of this levy.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)
The UIF insures employees against the loss of earnings due to termination of employment, illness or maternity leave. The contribution to the UIF is shared equally by affected employers and employees at a rate of 1% of remuneration each. The employee share of 1% is withheld by the employer and paid to SARS, together with the employer share of 1%, monthly.

Tax on international air travel
This tax is levied as follows: R190 per passenger departing on an international flight, excluding flights to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland, in which case the tax is R100.

Rates on property
Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage, which are collected by municipalities.

Customs duty
Customs duty is a tax levied on imports by the customs unit within SARS. Customs duty rates and trade remedies relating to the importation of goods into South Africa are set by the International Trade Administration Commission under the authority of the Department of Trade and Industry (the dti).

The new Customs Control Act of 2014 and Customs Duty Act of 2014 provide a platform for the modernisation of customs administration that achieves a balance between effective customs control, the secure movement of goods and people into and from South Africa and the facilitation of trade and tourism. In addition, VAT is also collected on goods imported and cleared for home consumption.

Voluntary Disclosure Programme (VDP)
A permanent VDP is part of a package of compliance measures aimed at encouraging non-compliant taxpayers to regularise their tax affairs.

In addition, a Special VDP allowed non-compliant taxpayers to voluntarily disclose offshore assets and income, with a limited window period, from 1 October 2016 to 31 August 2017.

Economic Development Department (EDD)
The EDD has assumed responsibilities relating to the creation of decent employment through inclusive growth.

This includes the implementation of certain aspects of the NDP, the new growth path and the national infrastructure plan, as captured in Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) and Outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

The department is also responsible for five public entities, three of which are regulatory bodies and two are development finance institutions. The entities are the:

- **Competition Commission***,* which is empowered to investigate, control and evaluate restrictive business practices, including the abuse of dominant positions and mergers; and to promote the advocacy of competition issues to achieve equity and efficiency in the South African economy.
- **Competition Tribunal**, which handles all large corporate mergers and allegations of restrictive practices brought by the Competition Commission and interested parties for adjudication.
- **International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa**, which is mandated to manage an efficient and effective trade administration system.
- **Small Enterprise Finance Agency**, which combines the operations of Khula Enterprise Finance, the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund and the Industrial Development Corporation's small business operations.

Why invest in South Africa

South Africa is one of the most sophisticated, diverse and promising emerging markets globally. Strategically located at the tip of the African continent, the country is a key investment location, both for the market opportunities that lie within its borders and as a gateway to the rest of the continent, a market of about one billion people.

South Africa is the economic powerhouse of Africa and forms part of the BRICS group of countries with Brazil, Russia, India and China. It has a wealth of natural resources (including coal, platinum, coal, gold, iron ore, manganese nickel, uranium and chromium) and it enjoyes increased attention from international exploration companies, particularly in the oil and gas sector.

The country has world-class infrastructure, exciting innovation, research and development capabilities and an established manufacturing base. It is at the forefront of the development and rollout of new green technologies and industries, creating new and sustainable jobs in the process and reducing environmental impact.

South Africa has sophisticated financial, legal and telecommunications sectors, and a number of global business process outsourcing operations are located in the country.

It has a host of investment incentives and industrial financing interventions that are aimed at encouraging commercial activity and its trade rules favour a further expansion in South Africa's burgeoning levels of international trade.

State-owned enterprises (SOEs)

The Department of Public Enterprises (DPE) is the shareholder representative for government at the state-owned companies (SOCs) in its portfolio. The department's mandate is to fulfil oversight responsibilities at these SOCs to ensure that they contribute to the realisation of government's strategic objectives, as articulated in the NDP, MTSF, the New Growth Path and the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP).

SOCs are crucial to driving the state's strategic objectives of creating jobs, and enhancing equity and transformation. The department does not directly execute programmes but seeks to use state ownership in the economy to support the achievement these objectives.

The DPE oversees the following six SOCs, which are key drivers of economic growth:

- **Alexkor** – A diamond mining company primarily operating in Alexander Bay and the greater Namaqualand.
- **Denel** – A defence company and although it is established as a private company in terms of the Companies Act of 2008, government exercises full control over it.
- **Eskom** – It generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agriculture and residential customers and redistributors.
- **South African Forestry Company** – It is the government's forestry company, conducting

timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities both domestically and regionally.
- **South African Express Airways** – South African Express Airways is a domestic and regional air carrier with a mandate to be an African airline.
- **Transnet** – It is a freight and logistics company responsible for pipelines, ports and rail transport infrastructure operations in South Africa.

Department of Trade and Industry

The dti works to promote industrialisation and transformation, and respond to unemployment, poverty and inequality. The strategic direction of this work is derived from the National Development Plan, and is underpinned by Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), Outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) and Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa and contribute to a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework.

Through the implementation of its higher-impact IPAP, the department will focus over the medium term on providing industrial financing, strengthening export capabilities, and developing industrial infrastructure. Cabinet has since approved the ninth annual iteration of the IPAP 2017/18 to 2019/20. Drivers of IPAP 2017-2020 include a redoubled commitment to radical economic transformation and ongoing efforts to secure shared and inclusive growth.

Other drivers include the rapid acceleration of the Black Industrialist Programme, and a much stronger and ongoing focus on labour intensity across the value chains that link the primary sectors of the economy to the manufacturing and services sectors.

By February 2017, the Black Industrialists Programme had supported 22 black industrialists and created 1 500 jobs, with R1.5 billion being injected to support the industrialists.

Department of Small Business Development

The DSBD was established in May 2014 to lead an integrated approach to the promotion and development e of small businesses and cooperatives. The department's work in this regard focuses on the economic and legislative drivers that stimulate entrepreneurship and contribute to radical economic transformation.

The DSBD's work supports the realisation of the National Development Plan's goal of supporting small enterprises to transform the economy and make it more inclusive.

It also contributes directly to Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF, which sets the department the task of identifying the institutional and regulatory changes required to accelerate growth of the small business sector and increase its contribution to job creation.

Over the medium term, the department intended to focus on increasing support to small enterprises; developing and supporting cooperatives; and developing, evaluating and reviewing strategies and legislation pertaining to small enterprises and cooperatives.

The **Small Enterprise Development Agency** is mandated to implement government's small business strategy, design and implement a standard and common national delivery network for small enterprise development, and integrate government funded small enterprise support agencies across all tiers of government.

Banking industry

South Africa's five largest commercial banks – Capitec Bank, FNB, Absa, Nedbank and Standard Bank – continued to dominate the South African banking sector.

By September 2018, there were 10 locally controlled banks and six foreign controlled banks, as well as 15 branches of foreign banks in South Africa.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited (JSE Ltd)

The JSE Ltd is the largest exchange on the African continent and the 19th largest in the world.

In keeping with international practice, the JSE Ltd regulates its members and ensures that markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection.

The JSE Ltd's roles include regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations.

Jobs Fund

The Jobs Fund was launched in June 2011 to co-finance projects by public, private and non-governmental organisations that will significantly contribute to job creation.

This involves the use of public money to catalyse innovation and investment on behalf of a range of economic stakeholders in activities that contribute directly to enhanced employment creation in South Africa.

To address the challenge of unemployment, South Africa requires high rates of sustained economic growth. The country's macro-economic policy environment, infrastructure asset base, schooling system and regulatory frameworks are all key to growth. However, improving and reforming these factors is a long-term process.

The Jobs Fund will consider proposals that perform competitively within enterprise development, infrastructure, institutional capacity building and support for work seekers categories.

By mid-2018, the Jobs Fund had a portfolio of 127 approved projects with a total allocation of R6.8 billion in grant funds. These projects were expected to potentially leverage an additional R9.7 billion from its partners to create 229 610 permanent jobs.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Education

Basic education

All South Africans have a right to basic education and the Bill of Rights obliges the government to progressively make education available and accessible through reasonable measures. The Department of Basic Education (DBE) is responsible for Outcome 1 (quality basic education) of government's Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) 2014-2019.

The aim of the DBE, which deals with all schools from Grade R to Grade 12, is to develop, maintain and support a South African school education system for the 21st century.

The department continues to focus on:

- accelerating delivery and improving school infrastructure;
- enhancing teaching and learning by ensuring access to high quality learner and teacher support materials; improving grade 12 completion rates;
- providing educational opportunities to learners with severe to profound intellectual disabilities;
- increasing the supply of quality teachers;
- monitoring performance; and providing nutritious meals to learners in schools through the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP).

The NSNP continues to contribute to the NDP's priority of eliminating poverty and supporting food security by providing meals to schools, feeding over nine million learners each year in quintile 1 to 3 schools.

Providing school infrastructure

The DBE aimed to complete remaining infrastructure projects to eliminate backlogs and replace unsafe school structures. It planned to replace 50 inappropriate and unsafe schools with newly built schools, and also provide water to 325 schools and sanitation to 286 schools in the 2018/19 financial year.

School attendance

According to the General Household Survey 2017, nationally, 32,3% of individuals aged five years and older attended an educational institution. Approximately 87,5% of South African individuals above the age of five years who attended educational institutions, attended school, while a further 4,5% attended tertiary institutions.

By comparison, only 2,1% of individuals attended Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges. Whilst the percentage in this broad age group has not changed, at peak ages of 7–15 years, attendance is almost universal.

Just over a fifth (21,8%) of premature school leavers in this age group mentioned 'a lack of money' as the reason for not studying, while 18,9% reportedly fell out due to poor academic performance.

Although 9,7% of individuals left their studies as a result of family commitments (i.e. getting married, minding children and pregnancy), it is noticeable that a larger percentage of females than males offered this as a reason (18,5% compared to 0,4%).

Whilst this observation is accurate, the data also suggest that the 'No fee' school system and other funding initiatives are beginning to show improved results. The percentage of learners who reported that they were exempted from paying tuition fees increased from 0,4% in 2002 to 66,0% in 2017.

Provincially, 91,4% of learners in Limpopo and 76,6% of learners in Eastern Cape attended no-fee schools, compared to 48,8% of learners in Western Cape and 48,5% of learners in Gauteng.

There were approximately 14 million learners at school in 2017, of which 5,9% attended private schools. Three-quarters (77,3%) of learners who attended public schools benefited from school feeding schemes. Furthermore, 68,1% of learners walked to school, while 8,2% used private vehicles.

Generally, the percentage of learners who experienced corporal punishment at school in 2017 has decreased nationally since 2009 and 6,8% of learners reportedly experienced corporal punishment at school in 2017.

Corporal punishment was most common at schools in Eastern Cape (12,7%) and Free State (12,6%). In terms of metros, it was most common at schools in Mangaung (14,9%). Approximately 686 000 students were enrolled at higher educational institutions during 2017. More than two-thirds (66,4%) of these students were black African. However, proportionally this group is still under-represented.

Only 3,4% of black Africans aged 18 to 29 years were studying as opposed to 13,8% of Indian/Asian individuals and 18% of the white population in this age group. Only 3,5% of the coloured population was studying during 2017.

Educational attainment outcomes continue to improve with improved access to educational facilities and services. Among individuals aged 20 years and older, the percentage who attained Grade 12 as their highest level of education increased from 30,7% in 2002 to 43,6% in 2017. Furthermore the percentage of individuals with tertiary qualifications improved from 9,2% to 13,9%.

The percentage of individuals without any schooling decreased from 11,4% in 2002 to 4,7% in 2017. Although results show that there were declines in percentages of persons who had no formal schooling in all the provinces over the period 2002 to 2017.

Whilst functional illiteracy declined from 27,3% in 2002 to 13,7% in 2017, improved access to schooling has led to a significant decline in the percentage of functionally illiterate individuals in the 20–39 age group.

Between 2002 and 2017, the prevalence of functional illiteracy in the age group 20–39 years declined noticeably for both men (17,1% to 6,0%) and women (15,8% to 3,5%). The adult literacy rate, however, lagged behind the national average (94,3%) in provinces such as Northern Cape (89,5%), North West (89,6%) and Limpopo (89,9%).

Enhancing teaching and learning

Ensuring access to high quality learning and teaching support materials, and ensuring they are used effectively, is critical to improving curriculum delivery.

The DBE continues to focus on providing well designed print and digital content to teachers and learners; expanding access to and improving the use of Information and Communications Technology (ICT) at schools; and providing teachers with essential tools and support.

Interventions in the foundation phase have the most significant impact on learning outcomes in the long term.

The Action Plan to 2019: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2030 emphasises the importance of early grade teaching to increase the number of learners in Grade 3, who by the end of the year, have mastered the minimum language and numeracy competencies.

The Early Grade Reading Study (EGRS) aims to address the cognitive levels of literacy challenges. The EGRS uses formal impact evaluation methods to investigate new ways to improve reading outcomes in the foundation phase.

It points to the potential value of providing teachers with lesson plans, additional reading materials and on-site coaching, as a way to improve reading in African Languages. Steps were also underway to conduct a similar Early Grade Mathematics Project to investigate cost-effective policy and programmatic interventions to improve Foundation Phase Mathematics.

To promote and improve on the foundational skills of reading, writing and counting, as well as having the basic necessities in place for quality teaching and learning to take place, the department, in partnership with the National Education Collaboration Trust, rolled out the Primary School Reading Improvement Programme for 11 000 Foundation Phase teachers across all provinces.

The DBE continued its focus on the Read to Lead Campaign, whose mandate is to mobilise society at large to contribute to the improvement of reading abilities of all South African children, in order to ensure that by 2019 all learners are able to demonstrate age-appropriate levels of reading.

To improve the performance of South African learners in international assessments, particularly in mathematics, science and technology, the department aims to increase learner participation and success rates in these subjects by providing ICT equipment, laboratories and related apparatus, workshops and equipment, teacher development, and learner and teacher support materials to 1 000 schools.

The department collaborates with ICT businesses such as Vodacom and Microsoft, and international organisations such as the United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund, to provide professional development for educators.

It will also procure and provide offline e-library solutions to 100 schools and upgrade the Thutong education portal, which offers support for teachers and learners in various subjects.

Expanding access to Early Childhood Development (ECD)

Research confirms that addressing the ECD needs of those aged 0–4 years pays significant dividends. South Africa has, in this regard, made access to comprehensive ECD programmes a very important educational priority.

The ECD programmes are offered at daycare centres, crèches, playgroups, nursery schools and in pre-primary schools. By mid-2018, approximately 42,8% of South African children aged 0–4 years attended daycare or educational facilities outside their homes. The highest attendance was reported in Gauteng (55,5%) and Free State (51,8%). A much lower enrolment was, however, observed amongst children in KwaZulu-Natal (30,9%) and North West (35,5%).

The DBE continues to work with the Department of Social Development in expanding access to ECD. A Sector Plan and the Human Resources Strategy for the Employment of Qualified ECD Practitioners within schools, were developed.

The department has since introduced the National Curriculum Framework for Children from birth to four years, which will assist in regulating and monitoring the curriculum offered at all ECD centres across the country.

The DBE's goal is to increase access to these services so that children, including those with special needs, can be accommodated, over and above improving the quality of the comprehensive package of services offered at these centres.

About one million children are accommodated at various ECD centres in all provinces and thus far, more than 21 000 ECD teachers have been trained.

Improving matric completion rates

The Second Chance Programme intends to increase the number of young people obtaining a matric qualification. In 2018/19, a total 25 000 learners were expected to enrol in the programme, which would offer support in 11 key subjects such as mathematics and science, as well as all home languages.

Face-to-face classes will be extended to 80 venues across South Africa with two teachers per subject, per venue. The plan over the long term is to make the programme virtual through broadcast and video lessons developed by universities and the department.

Support will also be provided at 40 broadcast centres nationally, which will transmit lessons on the OpenView satellite platform to about one million households. All content will also be available to candidates on DVD.

Online support will be provided on the department's website and Facebook page, and offline support at 82 sites nationally. Learners will be able to access support at community libraries, Vodacom centres and teacher centres across South Africa. Learner and teacher support materials will be printed and distributed to sites and learners on demand.

Support for learners with intellectual disabilities

The DBE has introduced the Learners with Profound Intellectual Disabilities Grant to improve the provision of quality education and support to learners with profound disabilities who are not in schools, and ensure that these learners are incrementally included in schools.

The department focuses on providing access to quality, publicly funded education and support to learners of school-going age with severe to profound intellectual disabilities who are not enrolled in school and whose education is not publicly funded through the grant.

National Integrated Assessment Framework (NIAF)

The annual national assessments, and the department's diagnostic of teaching and learning in the foundation and intermediate phases of schooling, have been discontinued and were replaced by the NIAF in 2018.

The framework aims to address the shortcomings of previous assessments with three complementary tiers of assessment (systemic evaluation, diagnostic assessment and summative assessment).

The department will focus on systemic evaluation, which will be conducted with a sample of learners in grades 3, 6 and 9 for a three-year cycle, and will monitor learner performance and report on the quality of learning outcomes.

In 2019/20, the department plans to conduct the school monitoring survey, a national survey in public schools that monitors progress towards the achievement of key goals and indicators in Action Plan 2019.

This plan details the direction the basic education sector will take to achieve the goals set out in the NDP and Outcome 1 (quality basic education) of government's 2014-2019 MTSF.

The survey will provide the sector with updated information on the indicators and delivery agreement of the plan.

Curriculum and Policy Statement (CAPS)

CAPS is a single, comprehesive and concise policy document which has replaced the Subject and Learning Area Statements, Learning Programme Guidelines and Subject Assessment Guidelines for all the subjects listed in the National Curriculum Statement Grades R – 12.

Role players

Provincial departments of basic education

The DBE shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each provincial department to finance and manage its schools directly. District offices are the provincial departments' main interface with schools.

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The core functions of SACE are registration, promotion and professional development of educators, as well as setting, maintaining and protecting the ethical and professional standards of educators.

Umalusi
Umalusi is responsible for developing and maintaining a sub-framework of qualifications for the General and Further Education and Training Qualifications Subframework (NQF Level 1 – 4) and the quality assurance of these qualifications. The Nguni name means “herder” or “shepherd.”

Programmes and projects
Learning and teaching support material Educational portal
Through the Thutong Portal (*www.thutong.doe.gov.za*), the DBE aims to lead the drive to improve learning in the country through appropriate use of technology.

The Thutong Portal is the online point of entry to a comprehensive array of free educational resources, policy information, and interactive services concerning all aspects of the South African schooling sector. It provides relevant information and services about the South African school curriculum, teacher development, school administration and management.

Thutong – meaning “a place of learning” in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

School fees and exemption
School fees are set at annual public meetings of school governing bodies (SGBs), where parents vote on the amount to be paid.

Parents who cannot afford to pay school fees can apply to the SGB for conditional, partial or full exemption from paying school fees. Schools must not charge school fees for orphans.

The right not to charge school fees will be limited to the schools that have been declared no-fee schools. The names of the no-fee schools, which are determine based on the economic level of the community around the school, will be published in a provincial gazette.

Accelerated Schools Infrastructure Delivery Initiative (ASIDI)
The objective of ASIDI is to eradicate the backlog in schools without water, sanitation and electricity, and to replace schools constructed from inappropriate material such as mud, and asbestos to contribute towards levels of optimum learning and teaching.

Higher education and training
The Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) derives its mandate from the:
- Higher Education Act of 1997, which provides for a unified national system of higher education
- National Student Financial Aid Scheme Act of 1999, which provides for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students attending public higher education and training institutions, and the subsequent administration of such loans and bursaries
- Continuing Education and Training Colleges Act of 2006, which provides for the regulation of continuing education and training, the establishment of governance structures for and the funding of public TVET colleges and community education and training colleges, the registration of private colleges, and the promotion of quality in continuing education and training
- Skills Development Levies Act of 1999, which provides for the imposition of skills development levies
- Skills Development Act of 2008, which enables the creation of the National Skills Agency; the establishment of the Quality Council for Trades and Occupations; and the regulation of apprenticeships, learnerships and other matters relating to skills development
- National Qualifications Framework (NQF) Act of 2008, which provides for the NQF, the South African Qualifications Authority and quality councils, for the issuing and quality assurance of qualifications required on the sub-frameworks of the NQF.

The NDP envisages that by 2030, South Africans should have access to a post-school education system that empowers them to fulfil their potential. Outcome 5 (a skilled and capableworkforce to support an inclusive growth path) of government's MTSF gives effect to this vision, stating that graduates of the post-school system should possess the skills and knowledge that allow them to meet the current and future needs of society and the economy.

Outcome 5 also highlights the need to expand access to programmes that address the labour market's need for intermediate skills and include a practical component.

The DHET is responsible for post-school education and training in universities, colleges and adult education centres.

The objective of the Post-School Education and Training function is that all South Africans have equitable access to relevant and quality post-school education and training.

New interventions continue to emerge and mature in support of integration in the post-school system. These include the Central Applications Service, the Career Development Services, and the South African Institute for Vocational and Continuing Education and Training, which will provide support for curriculum development and staff professional development in the TVET and community college sub-systems.

Institutions of higher learning

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
- North West University
- Rhodes University
- Sol Plaatje University, Eastern Cape
- Tshwane University of Technology
- University of Cape Town
- University of Fort Hare
- University of the Free State
- University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of Limpopo
- University of Mpumalanga
- University of Pretoria
- University of South Africa
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of Venda
- University of the Western Cape
- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Zululand
- Vaal University of Technology
- Walter Sisulu University, Eastern Cape
- Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University.

Technical and Vocational Education and Training

TVET comprises vocational, occupational and artisan education and training as offered by

TVET colleges. This band of education and training is also referred to as 'post-school', meaning that it refers to education and training that takes place after leaving school, even if only with a Grade 9 completed.

The only age restriction for a person wishing to study at the TVET level is that the person should be 16 years or older. There are 50 registered and accredited public TVET colleges in South Africa operating on more than 264 campuses spread across the rural and urban areas of the country.

The Centres of Specialisation Project contributes towards building capacity of the public TVET College system to deliver trade qualifications with employer partners.

Following a period of intensive research, the DHET established 13 trades that are particularly in short supply.

The department has contracted with four industry associations – the Steel and Engineering Industries of Southern Africa, the Retail Motor Industries, the Southern African Institute of Welding and the Institute of Plumbers of South Africa – to help upgrade two colleges per trade with a total of 26 colleges.

Role players

South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA)

SAQA is a statutory body that oversees the development of the NQF by formulating and publishing policies and criteria for the registration of organisations. It also oversees the implementation of the national framework by ensuring the registration, accreditation and assignment of functions.

Council on Higher Education (CHE)

The CHE is an independent statutory body to advise the Minister, monitor trends in the higher education system and assure and promote the quality of higher education.

The CHE also has the mandate to audit higher education institutions, accredit programmes offered, develop a higher education qualifications framework and set standards.

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO)

The primary functions of the QCTO are to design and develop occupational standards and qualifications and to submit these to SAQA for registration on the NQF, establish and maintain occupational standards and qualifications, ensure the quality of occupational standards and qualifications and learning in and for the workplace, promote the objectives of the NQF, liaise with the National Skills Authority (NSA) on the suitability and adequacy of occupational standards and qualifications, and on the quality of learning in and for the workplace.

Sector education and training authorities (SETAs)

SETAs continue to strengthen and deliver relevant priority skills to South Africa's labour market, with particular emphasis on artisan development, apprenticeships, learnerships, internships and bursaries; and partnerships with TVET colleges, universities and the market to provide work experience opportunities

SETAs are mandated by the Skills Development Act of 1998 to implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve skills in the South African workforce; provide learnerships that lead to a recognised occupational qualification and fund skills development.

The authorities derive their objectives directly from the third National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS), which aims to: increase access to occupationally directed programmes; promote the growth of public TVET colleges; address low levels of youth and adult literacy and numeracy skills; and encourage the better use of workplace-based skills development.

These objectives are in line with Outcome 5 (a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path) of government's MTSF 2014-2019.

National Skills Authority

The NSA is an advisory body to give guidance to the Minister of Higher Education and Training on:

- policy, strategy, implementation and NSA allocations
- liaising with SETAs about policy, strategy and sector-skills plans
- implementing the NSDS
- reviewing the accounts and balance sheet of NSA annually
- receiving and using information from the Skills Development Planning Unit.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS)

The NSFAS is responsible for providing loans and bursaries, developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students, raising funds, recovering loans, maintaining and analysing a database of funded students, undertaking research for the better use of financial resources and advising the Minister on matters relating to student financial aid.

In December 2017, government announced the implementation of fully subsidised free higher education and training for poor and working class South African students, starting with students in their first year of study at public universities. the NSFAS established the Departmental Bursary Scheme for Poor and Working Class Students in universities.

In February 2018, the Minister of Finance announced substantial new funding of R33.020 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) to enable the new Departmental Bursary Scheme to be implemented.

The funding will support approximately 84 000 First-time Entry students from families earning up to R350 000 per year, as well as ensure that all senior NSFAS qualifying students from families earning up to R122 000 per year are supported through grants rather than loans.

In addition, the Minister of Finance announced new funding for university subsidies amounting to R2.445 billion in 2018/19 and R11.309 billion over the MTEF. This will increase the subsidies to the university system provided through the Department from 0.68% of gross domestic product (GDP) to 1% of GDP by 2022/23.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Energy and Water

Energy

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages that by 2030 South Africa will have an energy sector that promotes economic growth and development through adequate investment in energy infrastructure. The plan also envisages that by 2030 South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to ensure that economic activity and welfare are not disrupted, and that at least 95% of the population will have access to grid or off-grid electricity.

The plan proposes that gas and other renewable resources like wind, solar and hydro-electricity will be viable alternatives to coal and will supply at least 20 000 MW of the additional 29 000 MW of electricity needed by 2030.

Other recommendations in the NDP include diversifying power sources and ownership in the electricity sector, supporting cleaner coal technologies, and investing in human and physical capital in the 12 largest electricity distributors. Energy security is at the core of current and future industrial and technological advancement.

The Department of Energy (DoE) is mandated to ensure the secure and sustainable provision of energy for socio-economic development. This is achieved by developing an integrated energy plan, regulating the energy industries, and promoting investment in accordance with the integrated resource plan.

The department's strategic goals, among others, are to ensure that the energy supply is secure and demand is well managed, and that there is an efficient and diverse energy mix for universal access within a transformed energy sector, and implement policies that adapt to and mitigate the effects of climate change.

The DoE places emphasis on broadening electricity supply technologies to include gas and imports, as well as nuclear, biomass and renewable energy resources (wind, solar and hydro), to meet the country's future electricity needs and reduce its carbon dioxide emissions.

Goals beyond 2020 include contracting more than 20 000 megawatts (MW) of renewable energy, including an increasing share from regional hydro-electricity.

South Africa has committed to attain substantial reductions in carbon dioxide emissions by 2025. The country supports research, technology development and special measures aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

Diversifying energy

The DoE continues to promote the optimal use of South Africa's renewable energy resources to ensure that the country's sustainable energy agenda is adhered to.

This includes expanding the independent power producers procurement programme. Renewable energy is an integral part of South Africa's low-emissions development strategy, and is vital to addressing the challenges of climate change, access to energy, and energy security.

To meet the needs of the economy without compromising government's commitment to sustainable development, the department is pursuing a balanced mix of energy that includes clean and renewable resources, as informed by the 2016 integrated resource plan. The plan has been released for public comment and is expected to be implemented over the medium term.

The newly developed Integrated Energy Plan optimises the relationship between the supply of electricity, gas and liquid fuels for meeting energy demand in the period up to 2050. Whereas detailed electricity supply options are outlined in the integrated resource plan, the integrated energy plan focuses on liquid fuels (mainly in the transportation sector), including addressing whether new oil refining capacity is required.

It also discusses piped gas, gas storage and liquefied natural gas infrastructure, considering regional gas options in terms of imports from Mozambique and Botswana, as well as local shale gas.

National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy

The National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy sets out the framework for the storage of fuel stock by government and the industry. It aims to ensure uninterrupted supply of petroleum products throughout South Africa by providing adequate strategic stocks and infrastructure such as storage facilities and pipeline capacity.

Strategic stocks are to be used during declared emergencies. The Minister of Energy will have the power to decide when a shortage of fuel and oil is at such a level to warrant an emergency.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

The LPG Strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy highlights strategic options that could be adopted for the orderly development of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications. LPG is considered one of the safest, cleanest and most sustainable energy sources.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with South African national standards.

Role players

Sasol

Sasol is an international integrated chemicals and energy company that leverages the expertise of over 30 300 people working in 33 countries.

It develops and commercialises technologies, and builds and operates world-scale facilities to produce a range of high-value product streams, including liquid fuels, chemicals and low-carbon electricity.

For over 65 years, Sasol has been a pioneer in the inventive monetisation of hydrocarbons. Using coal, crude oil and natural gas, along with the skills of our people and our technological advantage, it has become one of the world's largest producers of synthetic fuels and a global chemicals player.

Its vision is to grow profitably, sustainably and inclusively, while delivering value to stakeholders through technology and the talent of its people in the energy and chemical markets in Southern Africa and worldwide.

Sasol is listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange in South Africa and on the New York Stock Exchange in the United States of America.

Eskom

Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to about five million customers in the industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential sectors, and to redistributors.

Eskom sells electricity directly to about 3 000 industrial customers, 1 000 mining customers, 49 000 commercial customers, 84 000 agricultural customers and more than four million residential customers (of whom the majority are prepaid customers). Most of the sales are in South Africa, with other southern African countries accounting for a small percentage.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP was created with the primary aim to provide reliable and economical electricity supply to the consumers of each of the SAPP members, consistent with the reasonable use of natural resources and the effect on the environment.

The SAPP allows the free trading of electricity between Southern African Development Community member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the Congo River (Inga Falls).

Other role players

- **iGas** is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- **PetroSA** is a government-owned oil and gas company.
- The **Petroleum Agency of South Africa** promotes the exploration and exploitation of natural oil and gas, both onshore and offshore
- **Petronet** owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines, on behalf of the Government.
- The **National Energy Regulator of South Africa** is the regulatory authority for electricity, piped gas and petroleum pipelines.
- The **National Nuclear Regulator** is responsible for safety standards and regulatory practices for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage.
- The **Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa** is responsible for undertaking and promoting research and development in the field of nuclear energy and radiation sciences. It is also responsible for processing source material, including uranium enrichment, and cooperating with other institutions, locally and abroad, on nuclear and related matters.
- The **South African National Energy Development Institute** is mandated to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally.
- The **Central Energy Fund** researches, finances, develops and exploits appropriate energy solutions across the spectrum of energy sources to meet South Africa's future energy needs.
- The **National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute** is mandated to manage the disposal of radioactive waste nationally.

Energy resources

South Africa has very limited oil reserves. About 60% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa. The country produces about 5% of its fuel needs from gas, about 35% from coal and about 50% from local crude oil refineries. About 10% is imported from refineries elsewhere in the world.

South Africa has a sizeable capital stock and management capacity to produce fuel from gas. Between 2019 and 2025, the Gas-to-Power Programme is expected to procure 3 726 MW of capacity, stimulating the gas industry and associated infrastructure development.

South Africa participates in the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), which highlights that fossil fuel combustion/use inevitably emits Greenhouse Gasses, including CO2, which can be mitigated through the employment of Clean Coal Technologies (CCT).

The NDP provides the foundation for South Africa's vision of economic and socio-economic growth and advancement: It recognises the pivotal role that coal plays as the primary input in energy.

South Africa is committed to the management of efficient use of its coal through the employment of CCT. Through the Carbon Capture and Storage Project (CCSP) for the stabilisation of carbon dioxide, South Africa has made international commitments to a Low Carbon Economy and climate change, and thus Medupi and Kusile Power Stations use supercritical technology and are classified as CCSP ready.

Electricity

South Africa's household electrification programme has seen a significant increase in the number of households with access to electricity. The percentage of households connected to the electricity supply from the mains has increased from 76,7% in 2002 to 84,4% in 2017.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) 2017, the percentage of households that used electricity for cooking increased from 57,5% in 2002 to 75,9% in 2017. The use of electricity as a source of energy for cooking was highest in the Free State (85,6%), Northern Cape (84,9%), and Western Cape (79,8%) and lowest in more rural provinces such as Limpopo (60,2%), Mpumalanga (72,4%) and Eastern Cape (74,8%) where alternative fuels such as wood are, perhaps, more accessible and affordable.

Eskom generates 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and 45% of the electricity used in Africa.Unit 6, one of six generating units at the Medupi Power Station in Lephalale in Limpopo, was opened in August 2015 to contribute about 800 MW to the national grid.

Once completed in 2020, Medupi Power Station will add 4 764 MW to Eskom's grid and will be the world's largest coal-fired power station. This is also the fourth dry-cooled, baseload station to be built in 20 years by Eskom, after Kendal, Majuba and Matimba power stations.

Unit 5 is due for commercial operation in March 2018; Unit 4 in July 2018; Unit 3 in June 2019; Unit 2 in December 2019, and Unit 1 in May 2020.

At Kusile Power Station in Mpumalanga, Unit 1 was due for commercial operation in July 2018; Unit 2 in July 2019; Unit 3 in August 2020; Unit 4 in March 2021; Unit 5 in November 2021, and Unit 6 in September 2022. Once completed, Kusile will be the fourth-largest coal-fired power station in the world.

Biofuel

The biofuels industry in South Africa, the continent's biggest agricultural producer, has been held back by an inadequate regulatory regime and concerns that biofuels would hurt food security and affect food prices.

Canola, sunflower and soya are feedstock for biodiesel, while sugarcane and sugar beet are feedstock for ethanol.

Maize, South Africa's staple food, will not be used in the production of biofuels to ensure food security and control high prices. The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution, and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular.

In addition, second-generation biofuel technology will also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable energy targets sustainably.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

The Grand Inga Hydro-electrical Project, in partnership with the Democratic Republic of

Congo, was expected to generate over 48 000 MW of clean hydro-electricity. South Africa was expected have access to over 15 000 MW.

Solar power

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 kWh/m^2 and 6,5 kWh/m^2 in one day. The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, has sunshine all year round.

The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m^2 for South Africa.

Wind power

A study by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research found that the wind and solar power capacity operational during 2015 showed an R800 million net benefit to the economy achieved during that year, followed by a further marked increase in the first six months of 2015, helping to save more than an additional R4 billion in costs to the economy.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

There are two pilot hybrid systems in the Eastern Cape at the Hluleka nature reserve on the Wild Coast and at the neighbouring Lucingweni community.

Nuclear

Government has committed itself, by means of its Nuclear Energy Policy and Integrated Resource Plan (IRP), to an energy mix consisting of coal, gas, hydro, nuclear, solar and wind.

The nuclear new build programme will enable the country to create jobs, develop skills, create industries, and catapult the country into a knowledge economy. The IRP 2010 – 2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand.

Eskom operates the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station near Cape Town, the only nuclear power station in South Africa and the entire African continent, which supplies power to the national grid.

Programmes and projects

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme (REIPPPP)

The REIPPPP, established in 2010, has become one of the world's most progressive and successful alternative energy programmes. Ever since the introduction of these renewable energy technology programmes (solar, wind, biomass, small hydro and landfill gas power), plants have been going up across the country, feeding additional, clean energy into the national grid.

The REIPPPP represents the country's most comprehensive strategy to date in achieving the transition to a greener economy. The programme has been designed to contribute to the development of a local green industry and the creation of green jobs.

The programme seeks to procure energy from small scale IPPs, with projects that generate between one MW and five MW of energy from solar, wind, biomass and landfill gas projects. Through the REIPPPP, the DoE is targeting the procurement of 13 225 MW from IPPs by 2025.

Working for Energy Programme

The Working for Energy Programme is a social programme mainly intended to provide energy services derived from renewable resources to rural and urban low income houses in a manner that facilitates job creation, skills development, community-based enterprise development and the emancipation of youth, women and people with disabilities thereby creating sustainable livelihoods. It is an integral part of the Expanded Public Works Programme.

Water and sanitation

The Department of Water and Sanitation's (DWS) legislative mandate seeks to ensure that the country's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled in a sustainable manner for the benefit of all people and the environment.

The DWS is mandated to develop a knowledge base and implement effective policies, procedures and integrated planning strategies both for water resources and services.

This entails adhering to the requirements of water-related policies and legislation, including constitutional requirements, that are critical in delivering on the right of access to sufficient food and water, transforming the economy and eradicating poverty.

According to the Stats SA's GHS 2017, although 88,6% of South African households had access to piped water in 2017, only 74,2% of households in Eastern Cape, and 74,7% of households in Limpopo enjoyed such access. While South Africa has progressed in the supply of water to most urban and rural areas, water supply remains challenging in many communities in the country.

This situation does, however, represent a substantial improvement from that of 2002 when only 56,1% of households in Eastern Cape had access to piped water. Access to water in the dwellings, off-site, or on-site was most common in Nelson Mandela Bay (100%), the City of Cape Town (99,3%) and the City of Johannesburg (98,4%).

Nationally, 63,9% of households rated the quality of water-related services they received as 'good'. Satisfaction has, however, been eroding steadily since 2005 when 76,4% of users rated the services as good. An estimated 46,4% of households had access to piped water in their dwellings in 2016.

A further 26.8% accessed water on site while 13,3% relied on communal taps and 2,4% relied on neighbours' taps. Although generally households' access to water is improving, 3,7% of households still had to fetch water from rivers, streams, stagnant water pools and dams, wells and springs in 2017. This is, however, much lower than the 9,5% of households that had to access water from these sources in 2002.

Sanitation

According to the GHS 2017, through the provision and the efforts of government, support agencies and existing stakeholders, an additional 20,5% of households in South Africa have access to improved sanitation since 2012.

Western Cape (94,1%) and Gauteng (90,1%) were the provinces with the highest access to improved sanitation in the country, while provinces such as Mpumalanga and Limpopo had the lowest percentages at (67,6%) and (58,9%) respectively.

When analysing in the metropolitan areas, the highest percentages of households with access to improved sanitation were recorded in the City of Johannesburg (95.1%), Buffalo city (93,6%) and Nelson Mandela Bay (93,5%) and lowest percentages were recorded in the City of Tshwane (82,3%) and eThekwini (83,4).

Nationally, the percentage of households without sanitation, or who used the bucket toilet system decreased from 12,6% to 3,1% between 2002 and 2017.

Almost one-quarter (23,7%) of households expressed concern about poor lighting at the shared sanitation sites, trailed by inadequate hygiene (17,9%), and inadequate physical safety (16,3%).

Another 17,9% of households complained that there was no water to wash their hands after they had used the toilet, while 19,3% singled out long waiting times they experienced when they had to access these facilities.

National Water and Sanitation Master Plan (NWSMP)

To ensure a more co-ordinated approach to water and sanitation management, planning, implementation, monitoring and evaluation, the DWS has developed the NWSMP.

The NWSMP points out the priority actions required until 2030 and beyond to ensure the water security and equitable access to water and sanitation services for all in South Africa.

It was developed in partnership with all relevant organs of state and water sector stakeholders, to give effect to local, national, regional, continental and international water and sanitation delivery targets and commitments.

National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS)

The NWRS2 sets out the vision and strategic actions for effective water management. These included the security of water supply, environmental degradation, and pollution of resources.

It outlines the key challenges, constraints and opportunities in water resource management and proposes new approaches that ensure a collective and adequate response for the benefit of all people in South Africa.

This strategy moves towards the achievement and attainment of an inclusive sustainable and equitable economy.

The NWRS2 ensures that the management of national water resources contributes towards achieving South Africa’s growth, development and socio-economic priorities in an equitable and sustainable manner.

The strategy also responds to the priorities set by government in the NDP and National Water Act of 1998 imperatives that support sustainable development.

Dams and water schemes

The country has more than 500 government-owned dams spread across all nine provinces. They range in storage capacity from a volume of 5 500 million m^3 of water down to 0,2 million m^3 of water.

South Africa uses about 10 200 million m^3 of water a year from its major dams. The majority of water consumption can be attributed to drinking, irrigation, electricity, mining processes and industrial processes.

Bucket Eradication Programme

In keeping with the aspirations of the NDP, steady progress is being made towards eradicating the bucket toilet system in both formal and informal areas across South Africa.

In the 2017/18 financial year, the DWS had planned to eradicate the existing bucket sanitation backlog in formal settlements.However, a total of 8 313 buckets were eradicated in the Northern Cape and Free State areas. The project was hampered by the lack of bulk infrastructure to connect the sanitation systems.

Role players

Water boards

The primary activity of water boards is to provide water services (bulk potable and bulk waste water) to other water services institutions within their respective service areas.

They may perform other activities under conditions set out in the Water Services Act of 1997. There are 15 water boards in South Africa, with the three largest being Rand Water in Gauteng, Umgeni Water in KwaZulu-Natal and Overberg Water in the Western Cape.

Catchment management agencies (CMAs)

The main responsibilities of CMAs are to manage water resources at catchment level in collaboration with local stakeholders, with specific focus on involving local communities in the decision-making processes, in terms of meeting basic human needs, promoting equitable access to water, and facilitating social and economic development.

Water-user associations (WUAs)

WUAs are cooperative associations of individual water users who wish to undertake water-related activities at local level for their mutual benefit.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC has a vital role in water research by establishing needs and priorities, stimulating and funding research, promoting the transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and capacity building in the water sector.

It also focuses on water resources management, water-linked ecosystems, water use and waste management, and water use in agriculture.

Water Trading Entity (WTE)

The DWS is responsible for the regulation of water use in South Africa by ensuring that water is allocated equitably and used beneficially in the public interest, and is also required to create a register of all water users in the country.

The National Water Act of 1998 provides for cost recovery on services rendered by the department to water users. It is against this background that the department created the WTE within its administration.

The main function of the WTE is development, operation and maintenance of specific water resources infrastructure and managing water resources in specific water management areas.

Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (TCTA)

The TCTA is a State-owned entity (SOE) specialising in project financing, implementation and liability management.

It is responsible for the development of bulk raw-water infrastructure. It also provides an integrated treasury management and financial advisory service to the DWS, water boards, municipalities and other entities that are linked to bulk raw-water infrastructure.

Komati River Basin Water Authority

The Komati Basin Water Authority was established in terms of a treaty between South Africa and Swaziland. The aim of the authority is to manage the water resources of the Komati River basin sustainably. The authority is responsible for financing, developing, operating and maintaining the water resources infrastructure in the basin, comprising the Driekoppies Dam in South Africa and the Maguga Dam in Swaziland.

Water Tribunal

The aim of the Water Tribunal is to hear appeals against directives and decisions made by responsible authorities, CMAs or water management agencies about matters such as the issuing of licences to use water. It is an independent body and can hold hearings anywhere in the country.

Strategic Water Partners Network (SWPN)

In South Africa, water demand is expected to increase significantly over the next 30 years. The SWPN is a dynamic and cutting-edge partnership between the DWS, the private sector and civil society working collectively to close a 17% gap between water supply and demand that is anticipated to manifest by the year 2030 in South Africa.

The partnership strives to contribute to efficient, equitable and sustainable water supply and access to water for all South Africans through the identification and application of innovative and cost-effective solutions and programmes.

The SWPN will identify potential projects, assess these projects' ability to close the water volume gap, review best practices and technology, identify challenges that are limiting the replication of these projects nationally and nally, recommend how to overcome these challenges including incentives for widespread adoption.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Environment

The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) is mandated to give effect to the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being, and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations. To this end, the department provides leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of South Africans and the global community.

Chapter 5 of the National Development Plan (NDP) emphasises the importance of environmental sustainability for robust socio-economic development.

This is given expression by outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) and outcome 10 (protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

The mandate of the DEA is closely aligned with these outcomes. As such, the department prioritises the management, protection and conservation of South Africa's environment and natural resources.

Over the medium term, the department plans to focus on enforcing and monitoring compliance with environmental legislation; creating job opportunities through the expanded public works programme; moving towards a green economy; managing waste; managing climate change and air quality; managing oceans and coastal conservation; and transferring the operation of the national zoological gardens to the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI).

In 2018, South Africa was expected to participate in a number of important international fora, including the 13th meeting of the Conference of the Contracting Parties to the Ramsar Convention on Wetlands and the 14th meeting of the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity, the 9th Meeting of the Parties to the Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety and the 3rd Meeting of the Parties to the Nagoya Protocol on Access and Benefit-sharing.

South Africa hosted the 7th Meeting of Parties to Agreement on African-Eurasian Migratory Waterbirds (AEWA) in Durban from 4 to 8 December 2018, developed under the framework of the Convention on Migratory Species. The theme of the meeting was: "Beyond 2020: Shaping Flyway Conservation for the Future".

AEWA is an intergovernmental treaty dedicated to the conservation of migratory waterbirds and their habitats in Africa, Europe, the Middle East, Central Asia, Greenland and the Canadian Archipelago. Seventy-seven countries and the European Union have signed the environmental treaty.

National Action Programme (NAP) to combat desertification

South Africa, as a Party to the United Nations (UN) Convention to Combat Desertification, reviewed the 2004 NAP to combat desertification, land degradation and to mitigate the effects of drought for South Africa and developed a new NAP for the period 2017 to 2027.

Since approximately 91% of South Africa's landscape is drylands, it makes it susceptible to desertification.

Both desertification and land degradation are intricately linked to food security, poverty, urbanisation, climate change, and biodiversity and therefore are among the most critical environmental challenges in South Africa. The NAP will be a key tool in addressing these threats.

South African National Antarctic Expedition (SANAE)

The SA Agulhas II, dedicated to late singer Miriam Makeba, left for Antarctica on 6 December 2018 to spend 14 months at the South African research base, SANAE IV. On board South Africa's polar research and supply vessel was the 58th scientific expedition team to Antarctica.

South Africa is one of the original 12 signatories of the Antarctic Treaty of 1959 and the first SANAE was undertaken in 1959. The expedition established a permanent presence for South Africa in Antarctica that still exists to date.

The SANAE 58 team will collect long-term data such as sea surface temperature, oxygen and carbon measurements, which is instrumental to further enhance an understanding of present-day global climate change. South African and international weather forecasts rely heavily on the availability of data inputs from this region and having this continuous data set will enable better prediction of severe weather phenomena in the context of global climate change.

During this voyage, the SA Agulhas II was also expected to play a starring role in the historic, international multi-disciplinary Weddell Sea Expedition. With funding from the Flotilla Foundation, the team of world-leading glaciologists, marine biologists, oceanographers and marine archaeologists was expected to venture into remote regions of the Weddell Sea and uncover vital new scientific data to improve understanding of the area, using that knowledge to contribute towards the protection of the region.

Research would focus on the Larsen C Ice Shelf to provide valuable new insights into the local ecosystem, documenting the rich and little-studied marine environment, surveying the seafloor and under the ice and documenting the little-studied biological systems that lie beneath the ice shelf.

In addition, the expedition was also expected to undertake research to help better understand the oceanography and sea ice conditions of the Weddell Sea and the implications for climate change and global ocean currents.

Role players

South African National Biodiversity Institute

SANBI contributes to South Africa's sustainable development by facilitating access to biodiversity data, generating information and knowledge, building capacity, providing policy advice, showcasing and conserving biodiversity in its national botanical and zoological gardens.

SANBI engages in ecosystem restoration and rehabilitation, leads the human capital development strategy of the sector and manages the National Botanical Gardens as 'windows' to South Africa's biodiversity for enjoyment and education.

South Africa is one of the most biologically diverse countries in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. The country is surrounded by two oceans, occupies only about 2% of the world's land area, but is home to nearly: 10% of the world's plants; 7% of the reptiles, birds and mammals and 15% of known coastal marine species. The country comprises nine biomes (unique vegetation landscapes), three of which have been declared global biodiversity hotspots.

Biodiversity richness is one of South Africa's greatest assets, in terms of landscapes, ecosystems and species – the web of natural life – provides goods and services vital for human well-being and the survival of the planet. Goods and services such as water purification, grazing, ecotourism, fisheries, sources of medicine, energy, food, healthy soils, pollination, carbon sinks, clean air and production of oxygen.

South African National Parks

SANParks is the custodian of 19 national parks located in diverse vegetation types: Desert, Grassland, Forest, Succulent Karoo, Nama Karoo, Fynbos, Savanna, Albany Thicket, Indian Ocean Coastal Bled and Azon. the park system spans seven of South Africa's provinces, consists of over four million hectares (40 000 km2) and makes up about 67% of the land under formal conservation in the country

The organisation plays a significant role in the promotion of South Africa's nature-based tourism or ecotourism business, targeted at both international and domestic tourism markets.

Every year, from 14 to 18 September, all South Africans can visit national parks free of charge. The national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

SANParks is the leading conservation authority in all national parks around South Africa and responsible for protected land in 19 national parks. A transfrontier conservation area (TFCA) is a cross-border region.

The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. TFCAs allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The seven TFCAs are:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kavango-Zambezi
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area.

A biosphere designation is given by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) to special landscapes where people are collaborating to ensure their environmental integrity as the basis for their economic development.

Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- **Vhembe**, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.
- The **Kogelberg Reserve** on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The **Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve** starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to several protected bird species.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.

- The **Biosphere Reserve**, in the Waterberg in Limpopo is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The **Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve** stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The **Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve** is also recognised by the UNESCO in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

The other biosphere reserves in South Africa are:
- Kogelberg Reserve
- Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve
- Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve
- Waterberg Biosphere Reserve.

Areas of conservation

Protected areas

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. South Africa is home to more than nine million hectares of protected areas network, which includes national parks, nature reserves and world heritage sites, equating to about 8% of the country's land.

These protected areas, among other things, serve as sites for conserving the country's ecosystems, protection of high biodiversity value and provision of ecosystem services.

Most of these protected areas are geographically located in rural areas, forming an integral system with rural communities whose livelihoods and cultures are closely dependent on.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources. These include Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica. Access is limited to researchers and staff.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaans-kloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

Biomes

The nine major terrestrial biomes or habitat types in South Africa are divided into 70 veld types. The biomes are the Savanna, Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo, Grassland, Fynbos, Forest, Albany Thicket, Desert and Indian Ocean Coastal Belt. The Fynbos Biome is one of only six floral kingdoms worldwide.

World Heritage sites

South Africa has 10 World Heritage sites proclaimed by UNESCO, namely:
- **Robben Island** (Western Cape). Robben Island was used at various times between the 17th and 20th centuries as a prison, a hospital for socially unacceptable groups and a military base. Its buildings, particularly those of the late 20th century such as the maximum security prison for political prisoners, witness the triumph of democracy and freedom over oppression and racism. It is most famous for the incarceration of political prisoners, including former President Nelson Mandela, who was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in jail.

- **iSimangaliso Wetlands Park** (KwaZulu-Natal). It was formerly called the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park. The ongoing fluvial, mparine and aeolian processes in the site have produced a variety of landforms, including coral reefs, long sandy beaches, coastal dunes, lake systems, swamps, and extensive reed and papyrus wetlands. The interplay of the park's environmental heterogeneity with major floods and coastal storms and a transitional geographic location between subtropical and tropical Africa has resulted in exceptional species diversity and ongoing speciation. The mosaic of landforms and habitat types creates breathtaking scenic vistas. The site contains critical habitats for a range of species from Africa's marine, wetland and savannah environments.
- **Cradle of Humankind** (Gauteng). The Taung Skull Fossil Site, part of the extension to the site inscribed in 1999, is the place where in 1924 the celebrated Taung Skull – a specimen of the species Australopithecus africanus – was found. Makapan Valley, also in the site, features in its many archaeological caves traces of human occupation and evolution dating back some 3.3 million years. The area contains essential elements that define the origin and evolution of humanity. Fossils found there have enabled the identification of several specimens of early hominids, more particularly of Paranthropus, dating back between 4.5 million and 2.5 million years, as well as evidence of the domestication of fire 1.8 million to 1 million years ago It includes the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai.
- **Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park** (KwaZulu-Natal). The park has outstanding natural beauty, Africa's highest mountain range south of Kilimanjaro, and the largest and most concentrated series of rock art paintings in Africa. The site harbors endangered species such as the Cape vulture (Gyps coprotheres) and the bearded vulture (Gypaetus barbatus).
- **Mapungubwe Heritage Site** (Limpopo). Mapungubwe is an open, expansive savannah landscape at the confluence of the Limpopo and Shashe rivers. Mapungubwe developed into the largest kingdom in the sub-continent before it was abandoned in the 14th century. What survives are the almost untouched remains of the palace sites and also the entire settlement area dependent upon them, as well as two earlier capital sites, the whole presenting an unrivalled picture of the development of social and political structures over some 400 years.
- **Cape Floral Kingdom** (Western Cape). It is one of the world's great centres of terrestrial biodiversity. The extended property includes national parks, nature reserves, wilderness areas, State forests and mountain catchment areas. These elements add a significant number of endemic species associated with the Fynbos vegetation, a fine-leaved sclerophyllic shrubland adapted to both a Mediterranean climate and periodic fires, which is unique to the Cape Floral Region.
- **Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape** (Northern Cape). The 160 000 hectares (ha) of dramatic mountainous desert constitutes a cultural landscape.
- **Vredefort Dome** (Gauteng). This is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure or astrobleme. Dating back to over two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides critical evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.
- **ǂKhomani Cultural Landscape.** (Located at the border with Botswana and Namibia in

the northern part of the country, coinciding with the Kalahari Gemsbok National). The large expanse of sand contains evidence of human occupation from the Stone Age to the present and is associated with the culture of the formerly nomadic ǂKhomani San people and the strategies that allowed them to adapt to harsh desert conditions. They developed a specific ethnobotanical knowledge, cultural practices and a worldview related to the geographical features of their environment. The ǂKhomani Cultural Landscape bears testimony to the way of life that prevailed in the region and shaped the site over thousands of years.
- **Makhonjwa Mountains, known as the Barberton Greenstone Belt.** One of the world's oldest geological structures, the Makhonjwa Mountains in Barberton, Mpumalanga represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3.6 to 3.25 billion years, when the first continents were starting to form on the primitive Earth. It features meteor-impact fallback breccias resulting from the impact of meteorites formed just after the Great Bombardment (4.6 to 3.8 billion years ago).

In addition to sites inscribed on the World Heritage list, member states can maintain a list of tentative sites that they may consider for nomination. Nominations for the World Heritage list are only accepted if the site was previously listed on the tentative list. As of 2016, South Africa had listed seven properties on its tentative list:
- Succulent Karoo Protected Areas
- Liberation Heritage Route
- Early Farmsteads of the Cape Winelands
- The Emergence of Modern Humans: The Pleistocene occupation sites of South Africa
- Human Rights, Liberation Struggle and Reconciliation: Nelson Mandela Legacy Sites.

Wetlands
Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material to people. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:
- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)
Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include the:
- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

Zoological gardens

The National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa, also known as the Pretoria Zoo, is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. It is home to approximately 5 000 different mammals, birds, fish, reptiles, amphibians and invertebrates, comprising around 600 species and subspecies.

One of its unique features is that it has the largest inland aquarium in Africa, which also has a marine fish component. It is also the only zoo in South Africa that is home to Koalas, Okapi, Komodo Dragons and Forest buffalo, to name but a few.

A business transfer agreement between the Department of Science and Technology, DEA, National Research Foundation (NRF) and SANBI was signed in 2017 to enable the transfer of the NZG in Pretoria from the NRF to the SANBI with effect from 1 April 2018.

The Joburg Zoo, which was founded in 1904, is situated in Johannesburg and covers 55 ha of land. It houses over 320 species of animals.

Mitchell Park Zoo in Durban, which was named after Sir Charles Bullen Hugh Mitchell, is the country's second oldest zoo after the NZG in Pretoria.

Conservation centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the **Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre (MBCC)**, covering 1 394 ha.

The MBCC is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino. In 2007, it was proclaimed as a protected area as a Fossil Hominid Site of South Africa: Mokopan Valley.

The **Ann van Dyk Cheetah Centre**, formerly known as the De Wildt Cheetah Centre, is a breeding sanctuary for cheetahs and other endangered animals situated in Hartbeespoort.

In 1986, the centre achieved success when the cheetah was removed from the South African endangered species list. Other creatures being housed at the centre include African wild dogs, brown hyenas, servals, suni antelopes, riverine rabbits and a population of vultures.

The **Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre (HESC)** in Limpopo focuses on the breeding and conservation of a variety of animal species, including African wild cat, ground hornbill, sable antelope, lion, cheetah and rhino. The HESC works closely with advisory committees of the Pretoria Zoo and the University of Pretoria.

The African lion (*Panthera leo*) is included in Appendix II to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora; meaning it is not threatened with extinction. South Africa is one of only seven countries in the world that has substantial lion populations. By mid-2018, there were over 3 500 African lions in the wild in South Africa. Approximately 7 000 lions are kept in around 260 captive breeding facilities in South Africa.

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London. The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG of South Africa in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium's exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays.

Officially opened on 2 December 1931, the East London Aquarium is the oldest public aquarium in Southern Africa.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea-water species.

Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles. The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG in Pretoria houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is situated inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast. The Croc River Enviro Park in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga is the largest facility of its type in Africa.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

Protecting environmental resources

Private sector involvement

More than 400 organisations in South Africa concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora. These include the:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife

- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa, the country ranks as the fifth richest in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

Operation Phakisa, which was launched in 2014, is a new approach to enable government to implement its policies and programmes better, faster and more effectively.

By mid-2018, the DEA had registered notable progress with regards to Operation Phakisa Oceans Economy; Chemicals and Waste Phakisa, and Operation Phakisa Biodiversity Economy.

Rhino poaching

Rhino poaching is one of the national priority crimes in South Africa and the DEA continues to follow a multi-disciplinary approach in collaboration with the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster departments and agencies such as the departments of Defence; Justice and Constitutional Development; Correctional Services; and State Security; Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation (Hawks) and the South African Police Service.

SANParks, South African Revenue Service, Asset Forfeiture Unit, National Prosecuting Authority and all provincial conservation authorities also continue to provide the necessary support required in this endeavour.

In 2017, the domestic sale of rhino horn became legal following a Constitutional Court order that upheld a 2015 High Court decision lifting the 2009 moratorium. The domestic sale of rhino horn is conducted subject to the issuing of relevant permits in terms of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA) of 2004, its regulations and applicable provincial legislation.

Section 57(1) of the NEMBA of 2004 provides that a person may not carry out a restricted activity involving specimen of a listed threatened or protected species without a permit.

In order for the selling/buying permits to be considered, there are key requirements that must be met, such as documentary proof of legal possession, no criminal record under the NEMBA of 2004, rhino horn registered on national database and a DNA certificate.

A total of 1 028 rhino were poached between 1 January and 31 December 2017 compared to 1 054 in the same period for 2016, representing a decrease of 26 animals.

As a result of the DEA's anti-poaching strategy in the Kruger National Park, there has been a marked decrease in the number of poacher activities in the park, with a total of 2 662 recorded in 2017 compared with 2 883 in 2016. This represents a percentage decrease of 7,6%.

Whilst there has been a decrease in the number of rhino killed for their horns in the Kruger

National Park, the number of rhino poached increased in KwaZulu-Natal, Northern Cape, Mpumalanga, Free State and North West.

The DEA also reported that in 2017, a total of 67 elephants were poached in the Kruger National Park and one in KwaZulu-Natal.

In the reporting period, a total of 502 alleged rhino poachers and 16 alleged traffickers were arrested nationally bringing the total figure to 518. This represents a decrease from 2016 when a total of 680 poachers and traffickers were arrested.

For the Kruger National Park, the number of arrests of alleged poachers stood at 446 in 2017, comprising 189 arrests inside the Kruger National Park and 257 adjacent to the park. This represents an increase compared to 2016 when a total of 417 were arrested inside and adjacent to the Kruger National Park.

A total of 220 weapons were seized in rhino-related incidents both inside and outside the Kruger National Park in 2017. During 2017, a total of 21 SANParks officials were arrested for poaching-related offences.

Recycling

The **Waste Management Bureau**, which was established in 2016 in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Management Act of 2014, is tasked with promoting and facilitating the minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste by providing specialist advice and support for the development of integrated waste management plans for industry and municipalities.

The bureau is also tasked with monitoring the implementation of industry waste management plans, and managing the disbursement of revenue generated from charges for waste management.

The **National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications** also receives funding to implement compulsory specifications for plastic bags.

The **National Recycling Forum** is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa.

Collect-a-Can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in the country. It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

Climate change

South Africa continues to play an active role on the international stage through participation in a number of key multilateral environmental agreements.

In addition to finalizing the National Climate Change Adaptation Strategy, the country has developed a draft Climate Change Bill to provide effective national response for both mitigation and adaptation action.

By mid-2018, Phase One of the Greenhouse Gas Emission Reduction System was being implemented, with carbon budgets already allocated to most of the significant emitters.

The country was also working towards Phase Two, which would support its transition to a low carbon economy and society.

As part of efforts to combat climate change, the South African Weather Service recently adopted the approach of building “a WeatherSMART nation”.

This aims to enhance the early warning system to ensure that climate and weather data, products and applications are available to all South Africans.

The year 2018 marked 20 years since the adoption of the Environmental Impact Assessment as a tool to advance sustainable development.

Green economy

Through South Africa's Green Economy Strategy, the DEA continues to promote equitable, inclusive and sustainable economic growth and social development. The strategy has eight key pillars, namely:

- Green buildings and the built environment;
- Sustainable transport and infrastructure;
- Clean energy and energy efficiency;
- Natural resource conservation and management;
- Sustainable waste management;
- Water management;
- Sustainable consumption and production; and
- Agriculture food production and forestry.

Regarding green buildings and the built environment, the department was implementing energy efficiency and sustainable infrastructure projects as part of its Green Cities Programme.

The Green Fund was established in 2010 to provide catalytic finance for investment in initiatives that support South Africa's transition towards a green economy. The fund focuses on innovative projects that require financing to cover funding gaps.

Drawing investment from the private sector is one of the key mandates of the fund. As investments begin to show favourable returns, it is expected that private sector investors will invest without any State involvement.

Managing climate change and air quality

To manage climate change and air quality effectively, the DEA aims to increase the number of government-owned air quality monitoring stations reporting to the South African Air Quality Information System from 116 in 2017/18 to 125 in 2020/21.

Other activities include rolling out the Let's Respond toolkit in 40 municipalities to provide a process map for integrating responses to climate change into municipalities' integrated development plans.

South Africa, as a party to the Vienna Convention for the protection of Ozone Layer and the Montreal Protocol on Substances that deplete the ozone layer, is on course to reduce its consumption of Hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFC). The country met the 2017/18 target to reduce HCFC consumption by 20%.

Managing oceans and coastal conservation

The DEA continues to support annual research voyages to Antarctica, Marion Island and Gough Island. Servicing the contract with African Marine Solutions for the manning and operation of 2 research vessels, SA Agulhas II and SA Algoa, is one of the major cost drivers in the Oceans and Coasts programme.

Implementing the Oceans Economy Strategy forms part of Operation Phakisa, a fast results delivery programme launched by government in 2014.

The strategy includes activities in marine transport and manufacturing, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture, marine protection services, ocean governance, small harbours, and coastal and marine tourism.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Government

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary. The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution as "distinctive, interdependent and interrelated."

The Constitution

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres. The powers of the legislature, executive and courts are separate.

Parliament

Parliament consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Several measures have been implemented to make Parliament more accessible and accountable.

National Assembly

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members, elected through a system of proportional representation for a five-year term. It elects the President and scrutinises the executive.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates. The purpose of the NCOP is to represent the interests of the provinces in the national sphere of government.

Government clusters

Clusters were established to foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision making and service delivery. The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The seven clusters are:

- Infrastructure Development
- Economic Sectors and Employment
- Governance and Administration
- Human Development
- Social Protection and Community Development
- International Cooperation, Trade and Security
- Justice, Crime Prevention and Security.

The Presidency, June 2018
President: Cyril Ramaphosa
Deputy President: David Mabuza

Izimbizo

The *Izimbizo* programme is a communication platform that enables the citizenry to have a meaningful and direct engagement with members of the national, provincial and local executive. It promotes unmediated face-to-face communication with the public. It provides an opportunity to political principals to share government plans to improve service delivery and to listen to issues facing communities.

The eighth National Imbizo Focus Week took place from 9 to 15 July 2018 under the theme: "Together we move South Africa forward." It took place during the year in which the country celebrated the centenary of two Struggle stalwarts, Tata Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela under the theme: “Be the Legacy”, and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu under the theme: “A Woman of Fortitude”. This followed the Year of Oliver Reginald Tambo in 2017 under the theme: “The Life and Legacy of OR Tambo”.

Inter-Ministerial Committees (IMCs)

The President of the Republic of South Africa (and in certain instances the Cabinet) appoints IMCs for specific purposes that require the attention and dedication of a team of certain Ministers. The mandate of the IMCs is limited to the matter that they are established to execute. They included:

- IMC on the Prevention and Combating of Corruption;
- IMC on Information and Publicity;
- IMC on State Funerals;
- IMC on the Revitalisation of Distressed Mining communities;
- IMC on Immigration Regulations;
- IMC on Investment Promotion;
- IMC on Local Government Elections;
- IMC on on the Centenaries of Mama Albertina Sisulu and Tata Nelson;
- IMC on the South Africa Investment Conference;
- IMC on Land Reform.

The Presidency

The Presidency is the executive manager of government. It is situated in the Union Buildings, Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

There are two Ministers in The Presidency, one responsible for Women and the other for Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation. The NDP offers a long-term socio-economic development road map. The NDP: Vision for 2030 focuses on the following strategic areas of development:

- creating jobs
- expanding infrastructure
- sustainable use of resources
- transforming urban and rural spaces
- improving education and training
- providing quality healthcare
- building a capable state
- fighting crime and corruption
- uniting the nation.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

Cabinet

Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and Ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and Ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them.

Premiers, as at October 2018

Province	Premier
Eastern Cape	Phumulo Masualle
Free State	Sefora Ntombela
Gauteng	David Makhura
KwaZulu-Natal	Willies Mchunu
Limpopo	Stanley Mathabatha
Mpumalanga	Refilwe Mtshweni
Northern Cape	Sylvia Lucas
North West	Job Mokgoro
Western Cape	Helen Zille

No more than two Ministers may be appointed from outside the National Assembly.

Cabinet Ministers and Deputy Ministers, as at November 2018		
Portfolio	**Minister**	**Deputy Minister**
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	Senzeni Zokwana	Sfiso Buthelezi
Arts and Culture	Nathi Mthethwa	Makhotso Sotyu
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Enver Surty
Communications	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams	Pinky Kekana
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Zweli Mkhize	Obed Bapela Andries Nel
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Kebby Maphatsoe
Economic Development	Ebrahim Patel	Madala Masuku
Energy	Jeff Radebe	Thembi Majola
Environmental Affairs	Nomvula Mokonyane	Barbara Thomson
Finance	Tito Mboweni	Mondli Gungubele
Health	Aaron Motsoaledi	Joe Phaahla
Higher Education and Training	Naledi Pandor	Buti Manamela
Home Affairs	Siyabonga Cwele	Fatima Chohan
Human Settlements	Nomaindia Mfeketo	Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks
International Relations and Cooperation	Lindiwe Sisulu	Reginah Mhaule Luwellyn Landers
Justice and Correctional Services	Michael Masutha	Thabang Makwetla John Jeffery
Labour	Mildred Oliphant	Patekile Holomisa
Mineral Resources	Gwede Mantashe	Godfrey Oliphant
Police	Bheki Cele	Michael Mkongi
Public Enterprises	Pravin Gordhan	_
Public Service and Administration	Ayanda Dlodlo	Chana Pilane-Majeke
Public Works	Thulas Nxesi	Jeremy Cronin
Rural Development and Land Reform	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Candith Mashego-Dlamini Mcebisi Skwatsha
Science and Technology	Mmamoloko Kubayi-Ngubane	Zanele kaMagwaza-Msibi
Small Business Development	Lindiwe Zulu	Cassel Mathale
Social Development	Susan Shabangu	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Sport and Recreation	Tokozile Xasa	Gert Oosthuizen
State Security	Bongani Bongo	Ellen Molekane
Telecommunications and Postal Services	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams	_
The Presidency: Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation	Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	_
The Presidency: Women	Bathabile Dlamini	–
Tourism	Derek Hanekom	Elizabeth Thabethe
Trade and Industry	Rob Davies	Gratitude Magwanishe
Transport	Blade Nzimande	Sindisiwe Chikunga
Water and Sanitation	Gugile Nkwinti	Pamela Tshwete

Provincial government

Each of the nine provinces has its own legislature of 30 to 80 members. They elect the premiers who head the executive councils.

Traditional leadership

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the then National House of Traditional Leaders Act of 1997. Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Local government

Local government is the sphere of government closest to the people. In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act of 1997, which formally recognises organised local-government associations, organised local government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

Municipalities

Recent developments include the redemarcation of municipal boundaries in South Africa after the 2016 Local Government Elections. This reduced the number of municipalities from 278 to 257, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 205 local municipalities. Municipalities govern on a four-year term basis and run local affairs subject to national and provincial legislation. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA)

The Department of CoGTA is mandated to: develop and monitor the implementation of national policy and legislation aimed at transforming and strengthening key institutions and mechanisms of governance in national, provincial and local government to fulfil their developmental role; develop, promote and monitor mechanisms, systems and structures to enable integrated service delivery and implementation within government; and promote sustainable development by providing support to and exercising oversight of provincial and local government.

The department's Back to Basics strategy, which was launched in 2014, aims to improve the quality of basic services, foster good governance and build institutional capacity in local government, encourage public participation, and create work opportunities.

The five pillars of the strategy are:

- **Batho Pele (Putting People First):** Put people and their concerns first and ensure constant contact with communities through effective public participation platforms.
- **Deliver Reliable Services:** Create decent living conditions by consistently delivering the right quality and standard of municipal services. This entails planning and budgeting, delivering infrastructure, amenities and maintenance and ensuring that there are no service failures. Should failures occur, restore services with urgency.
- **Sound Financial Management:** Demonstrate good governance and administration, which include waste reduction, prudent public funds expenditure, recruitment of competent staff and transparency and accountability.
- **Good Governance:** Ensure sound financial management and accounting and manage resources effectively to sustain service delivery and community development.
- **Build Capable Institutions:** Build and maintain sound institutional and administrative capabilities that are administered and managed at all levels by dedicated and skilled personnel.

The Department of CoGTA is also responsible for managing and transferring the Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG), which provides specific capital finance for basic municipal infrastructure backlogs for poor households, micro-enterprises and social institutions servicing poor communities.

The MIG enables the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting in poor communities.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC is tasked and empowered to, amongst others, investigate, monitor, and evaluate the organisation and administration of the Public Service.

This mandate also entails the evaluation of achievements, or lack thereof of government programmes. The PSC also has an obligation to promote measures that would ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

National School of Government (NSG)

The NSG is intended to educate, train, professionalise and develop a highly capable, skilled and committed public service cadre, with a sense of national duty and a common culture and ethos. It nurtures a culture of professionalism and innovative thinking and serve as a catalyst for reform and modernisation in pursuit of a performance-oriented public service.

Department of Public Works (DPW)

The DPW aims to promote the government's objectives of economic development, good governance and rising living standards and prosperity by providing and managing the accommodation and infrastructure needs of national departments, by leading the national Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and transforming the construction and property industries.

The EPWP remains an effective part of government's response to the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality. Through the EPWP, projects such as building low-cost bridges over rivers, were making a real difference to people's lives. The projects carried out by the EPWP sought to improve the quality of life of poor communities in particular.

Community development workers (CDWs) serve as a link between communities with many government services and programmes. Located within communities, CDWs assist citizens by helping them to access services such as health, welfare, housing, agriculture, economic activity, education and training, and employment opportunities.

Department of Home Affairs (DHA)

The DHA is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is issuing birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates.

The department is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of immigration.

Statutory bodies falling under the department are the:
- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

Department of Labour

The Department of Labour derives its legislative mandate from the Constitution, particularly the Bill of Rights, which is given effect through a number of acts that regulate labour matters in South Africa. The most important of these are the Labour Relations Act of 1995, the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997, the Employment Equity Act of 1998, the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993, and the Employment Services Act of 2014.

The mandate of the department is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners. These aim to:
- improve economic efficiency and productivity
- facilitate decent employment creation
- promote labour standards and fundamental rights at work
- provide adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers
- promote and enforce sound labour relations
- promote equity and eliminate unfair discrimination in the workplace
- eliminate inequality and discrimination in the workplace
- enhance occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace
- give value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for the competitiveness of enterprises, balanced with the promotion of decent employment department.

Government Printing Works (GPW)

The GPW, a division of the DHA, is mandated to provide security printing and ancillary services to all organs of state in all spheres of government.

It deals with the printing of passports, visas, birth certificates, smart-card identification documents and examination materials, as well as government stationery and publications, such as tender bulletins and government gazettes. The GPW also provides printing services to some Southern African Development Community states.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Health

The Department of Health (DoH) derives its mandate from the National Health Act of 2003, which requires that the department provides a framework for a structured and uniform health system for South Africa. The Act sets out the responsibilities of the three levels of government in the provision of health services.

The DoH contributes directly to the realisation of Outcome 2 (a long and healthy life for all South Africans) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

In line with the vision of the National Development Plan (NDP) of ensuring a long and healthy life for all South Africans, the department focuses on sustainably expanding HIV and AIDS and tuberculosis (TB) treatment and prevention, revitalising public healthcare facilities, and ensuring the provision of specialised tertiary hospital services.

The Bill of Rights in Section 27 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 states unequivocally that access to healthcare is a basic human right.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) Mid-year population estimates 2018, the total number of persons living with HIV in South Africa increased from an estimated 4,25 million in 2002 to 7,52 million by 2018.

For 2018, an estimated 13,1% of the total population was HIV positive. Approximately one-fifth of South African women in their reproductive ages (15–49 years) are HIV positive. HIV prevalence among the youth aged 15–24 has declined over time from 6,7% in 2002 to 5,5% in 2018.

By 2018 life expectancy at birth was estimated at 61,1 years for males and 67,3 years for females. Infant mortality rate has declined from an estimated 53,2 infant deaths per 1 000 live births in 2002 to 36,4 infant deaths per 1 000 live births in 2018. Similarly, the under-five mortality rate declined from 80,1 child deaths per 1 000 live births to 45,0 child deaths per 1 000 live births between 2002 and 2018.

The number of AIDS-related deaths declined consistently since 2007 from 276 921 to 115 167 in 2018. Access to antiretroviral (ARV) treatment has changed historical patterns of mortality. Access to ARV therapy has thus extended the lifespan of many in South Africa, who would have otherwise died at an earlier age.

Revitalising public healthcare facilities

By mid-2018, the department was in the process of finalising a 10-year infrastructure plan to determine areas with the greatest need for capital investments, based on population projections up to 2025. The department was working closely with implementing agents to ensure that all 872 primary healthcare (PHC) facilities in the National Health Insurance (NHI) pilot districts are maintained, constructed or revitalised by 2019/20.

The General Household Survey 2017 conducted by Stats SA found that about seven out of every 10 (71,2%) households used public-health facilities as their first point of access when household members needed healthcare services for an illness or injury.

Furthermore, the survey reported that 81.7% of households attending public health facilities were either very satisfied or satisfied with the service they received. This finding is similar to the 2017 Patient Experience of Care Survey conducted in 168 randomly selected PHC facilities, which found that 76.5% of 7 128 patients had positive experiences of care and 74.8% were also satisfied with the services they received in the facilities.

Among other things, the Patient Experience of Care Survey pointed out that medicine availability is one of the main contributors towards patient satisfaction.

At the end of March 2018, a cumulative total of 1 507 of the 3 434 facilities assessed had attained Ideal Clinic status, which is an initiative that was started in July 2013 to improve quality and efficiency in PHC facilities in the public sector.

HIV, AIDS and TB

South Africa has signed up to the Joint United Nations Programme on HIV and AIDS targets of reaching 90-90-90 for HIV by December 2020 as well as the Stop TB Partnership's targets of 90-90-90 for TB.

These targets simply mean that to bring an end to these two diseases, the DoH must find 90% of those that are HIV positive and those that have TB, initiate 90% of these on treatment and ensure that 90% of those that are on ARVs are virally suppressed and that 90% of those on TB treatment are successfully cured.

The country has also partnered with the United States President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief programme to develop the so-called Surge campaign by identifying two million HIV-positive people and putting them on treatment by December 2020.

Prevention is the mainstay of efforts to combat HIV and AIDS. Since the HIV Counselling and Testing campaign was introduced in 2010, over 44 million people have been tested. A total of 13 872 315 people were tested for HIV, exceeding the annual target of 10 million for the 2017/18 financial year. At the end of March 2018, the total number of clients remaining on ART therapy was 4 189 070.

Medical Male Circumcision (MMC) is one of the DoH's combination HIV prevention interventions. During 2017/18, a total of 539 892 MMCs were performed.

Regarding TB, the new client treatment success rate reached 84.4%, while the TB client death rate was maintained at 3.9% in 2017/18, the same as the rate in the previous financial year. Specific annual targets had been set for TB screening in correctional services and controlled mines.

National Health Insurance

The NHI aims to ensure that all citizens and residents of South Africa, irrespective of socio-economic status, have access to good-quality health services provided by both the public and private sectors, thereby eradicating financial barriers to health care access. The NDP envisions a health system that works for everyone, produces positive health outcomes and is accessible to all.

By 2030, the NDP expected South Africa to have, among other things, raised the life expectancy of South Africans to at least 70 years; produced a generation of under-20s that is largely free of HIV; achieved an infant mortality rate of less than 20 deaths per thousand live births, including an under-five mortality rate of less than 30 per thousand; achieved a significant shift in equity, efficiency and quality of health service provision.

Potential benefits from the NHI Fund would include:

- treatment for schoolchildren with physical barriers to learning such as eyesight, hearing, speech and oral health;
- free ante-natal care in the form of eight visits to a doctor to each of the 1,2 million women who fall pregnant annually. Family planning, breast and cervical cancer screening and where appropriate, treatment, will be provided;
- better services for mental health users, such as screening;
- assistive devices for the elderly like spectacles, hearing aids and wheelchairs.

The *White Paper on NHI* policy was published in the *Government Gazette* on 30 June 2017. The draft NHI Bill and the Medical Schemes Amendment Bill were considered by Cabinet. Phase 1 of NHI implementation came to an end in 2016.

During this phase, the department implemented various health systems-strengthening initiatives. These initiatives were first implemented in 11 NHI pilot districts, and thereafter rolled out to health facilities outside the NHI pilot districts. Phase 2 commenced in 2017, with the establishment of seven NHI bodies, structures and commissions.

Community outreach

Community outreach interventions include community health workers (CHWs) as a first point of contact between PHC facilities and surrounding communities.

South Africa's PHC system is built on a model of functional Municipal Ward-Based PHC Outreach Teams, consisting of teams of CHWs linked with health facilities. The CHWs proactively initiate visits to households to perform a variety of basic healthcare services within their scope of practice. At the end of 2017/18, a total of 3 323 PHC Outreach Teams were active in providing basic health services to children and adults.

National Policy for Nursing Education and Training

The National Policy for Nursing Education and Training aims to ensure uniformity and standardisation in the provision of nursing education by eliminating unregistered institutions, and improve clinical training for all programmes leading to professional registration.

Three core national curricula aligned with national health priorities in the PHC re-engineering model were developed and submitted for accreditation.

These include a new three-year diploma programme that will produce generalist nurses able to manage low-risk health problems, and a one-year advanced diploma programme that will produce midwives competent to manage maternal and neonatal care. The programmes will be offered from January 2020.

Integrated School Health Programme (ISHP)

The ISHP contributes to the health and well-being of learners through screening for health barriers to learning. By mid-2018, a cumulative total of 4 339 875 learners had been screened through this programme since its inception in 2012. Since inception of the programme, 504 803 learners had been identified with various health barriers to learning, and referred for treatment.

Central Chronic Medicines Dispensing and Distribution (CCMDD)

The CCMDD programme has continued to dispense prescribed medicines at accessible pick-up points to patients with chronic conditions. In 2017/18, a total of 2 182 422 patients enrolled to collect their prescribed medicines from over 855 pick-up points.

The department continues with the roll-out of the medicines stock-out surveillance system to ensure that medicines are always available in PHC facilities and hospitals.

Implementation of the stock visibility system increased from 3 121 clinics and community health centres in 2016/17 to 3 167 clinics and community health centres in 2017/18 (92% coverage).

MomConnect programme

The MomConnect programme, which was launched in August 2014, aims to improve access to early antenatal services and to empower pregnant women with relevant health knowledge. Pregnant women register via their mobile phones to receive weekly messages appropriate to their stage of pregnancy.

The number of pregnant women and mothers registered on MomConnect doubled from 917 053 in the 2016/17 financial year to 1 888 918 in the 2017/18 financial year. A total of 1 549 complaints and 14 337 compliments have been registered and resolved since its inception.

At the end of March 2018, a total of 818 688 pregnant women and mothers were receiving health-promotion messages.

Health Patient Registration System (HPRS)

The HPRS provides a Patient Registry and Master Patient Index using the South African identification number and other forms of legal identification. At the end of March 2018, a total of

2 968 PHC facilities were using the system and more than 20 million people had been registered on the system, compared with 1 849 PHC facilities and 6.3 million registered at the end of March 2017.

Medical schemes

By September 2018, there were about 80 medical schemes in South Africa, with over eight million beneficiaries.

According to Stats SA's General Household Survey 2017, nearly a quarter (23,3%) of South African households had at least one member who belonged to a medical aid scheme. However, a relatively small percentage of individuals in South Africa (17,1%) belonged to a medical aid scheme in 2017.

Health entities

- The **Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works** is mandated to compensate workers and ex-workers in controlled mines and works for occupational diseases of the cardiorespiratory organs and reimburse for loss of earnings incurred during TB treatment.
- The **Council for Medical Schemes** is a regulatory authority responsible for overseeing the medical schemes industry in South Africa. Its functions include protecting the interests of beneficiaries, controlling and coordinating the functioning of medical schemes, collecting and disseminating information about private healthcare and advising the Minister of Health on any matter concerning medical schemes.
- The **Office of Health Standards Compliance** is mandated to monitor and enforce the compliance of health establishments with the norms and standards prescribed by the Minister of Health in relation to the national health system; and ensure the consideration, investigation and disposal of complaints relating to non-compliance with prescribed norms and standards in a procedurally fair, economical and expeditious manner.
- The **South African Medical Research Council** is mandated to promote the improvement of health and quality of life through research development and technology transfer. Research and innovation are primarily conducted through council funded research units located within the council and in higher education institutions.
- The **National Health Laboratory Service** is mandated to support the DoH by providing cost-effective diagnostic laboratory services to all state clinics and hospitals. It also provides health science training and education, and supports health research. It is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, servicing more than 80% of the population, through a national network of 268 laboratories. Its specialised divisions include the National Institute for Communicable Diseases, the National Institute for Occupational Health, the National Cancer Registry and the South African Vaccine Producers as its subsidiary.
- The **South African Health Products Regulatory Authority** was established in April 2017 as a public entity responsible for the regulation of medicines, medical devices and radiation control. These functions were previously performed by the Medicines Control Council.
- The **Health Professions Council of South Africa** guides and regulates the health professions in the country in aspects pertaining to registration, education and training, professional conduct and ethical behaviour, ensuring continuing professional development, and fostering compliance with healthcare standards.
- The **South African Nursing Council** sets and maintains standards of nursing education and practice in South Africa. It is an autonomous, financially independent, statutory body.
- The **South African Pharmacy Council** is an independent, self-funded, statutory body mandated to regulate the pharmacy profession in the country witåh powers to register pharmacy professionals and pharmacies, control of pharmaceutical education, and ensuring good pharmacy practice.

- The **South African Dental Technicians Council** is a regulatory body responsible for regulating the Dental Technology profession in South Africa.
- The **Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa** controls all allied health professions, which include Ayurveda, Chinese Medicine and Acupuncture, Chiropractic, Homeopathy, Naturopathy, Osteopathy, Phytotherapy, Therapeutic Aromatherapy, Therapeutic Massage Therapy, Therapeutic Reflexology and Unani-Tibb.
- The **Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council** gives traditional health practitioners registered with it the authority to issue medical certificates in line with the provisions of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997.

Nelson Mandela-Fidel Castro Medical Collaboration

As part of bilateral agreements on public health between South Africa and Cuba signed in 1994, the Nelson Mandela/Fidel Castro Medical Collaboration Programme was initiated to relieve the acute shortage of human capacity in the public health sector, in line with South Africa's strategic objective to increase the production of human resources for health.

Cuba was the country of choice for training because of its impressive health indicators, based on successful implementation of a PHC model.

The first group of 712 final-year MBChB students arrived in the country in July 2018, to complete their final year of medical studies in local clinical practice, as part of the integration process. Since the inaugural graduation of the first cohort in 2004, a total of 657 Cuban-trained medical students have graduated.

In 2019, the largest number of Cuban-trained medical students registered thus far for their final year are expected to graduate as medical doctors. These students are expected to complete their clinical training at local universities, namely Stellenbosch University, University of Cape Town, University of the Free State, University of KwaZulu-Natal, University of Limpopo, University of Pretoria, Walter Sisulu University, University of the Witwatersrand, and Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Human Settlements

The Department of Human Settlements (DHS) derives its core mandate and responsibilities from Section 26 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and Section 3 of the Housing Act of 1997, read in conjunction with approved policies and chapter 8 of the National Development Plan (NDP).

This allows the DHS, in collaboration with provinces and municipalities, to establish and facilitate a sustainable national housing development process. The department does this by: determining national policy and national norms and standards for housing and human settlements development; setting broad national housing delivery goals, and monitoring the financial and non-financial performance of provinces and municipalities against these goals.

In executing these roles and responsibilities, the department also builds capacity for provinces and municipalities, and promotes consultation with all stakeholders in the housing-delivery chain, including civil society and the private sector.

The DHS is committed to the NDP's vision of transforming human settlements and the spatial economy to create more functionally integrated, balanced and vibrant urban settlements by 2030.

Outcome 8 (sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life) of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework is aligned with this vision and guides the work of the department, as well as its commitment to improving institutional capacity and coordination across government.

The NDP sets out a human settlements trajectory proposition that, 'by 2050 visible results from effectively coordinated spatial planning systems shall have transformed human settlements in South Africa into equitable and efficient spaces with citizens living in close proximity to work with access to social facilities and essential infrastructure'.

It also envisages that by 2030, measurable progress towards breaking apartheid spatial patterns would be achieved. This places a responsibility on the department to ensure that the apartheid geography and the fractured housing and land markets are dealt with.

The department is focusing on ensuring that poor households have access to adequate housing in better living environments and creating a functional housing market. It was expected to invest in catalytic projects across South Africa that involve mixed use, mixed income and integrated human settlement developments aimed at providing spatially, socially and economically integrated communities.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) 2017, between 2002 and 2017, the percentage of households that lived in formal dwellings and whose dwellings were fully owned showed similar percentage, while the percentage of partially owned dwellings declined from 15,3% to 8,8%. About 13,1% of households had 'other' forms of tenure arrangements in 2017.

Slightly over eight-tenths (80,1%) of South African households lived in formal dwellings in 2017, followed by 13,6% in informal dwellings, and 5,5% in traditional dwellings. The highest percentage of households that lived in formal dwellings were observed in Limpopo (91,7%), Mpumalanga (86,9%), and Northern Cape (86,0%). Approximately one-fifth of household lived in informal dwellings in North West (19,9%), and Gauteng (19,8%).

At the time of the survey, 13,6% of South African households were living in 'RDP' or state-subsidised dwellings. Some residents have, however, raised concerns about the quality of subsidised houses and 10,2% said that the walls were weak or very weak while 9,9% regarded the dwellings' roofs as weak or very weak.

The DHS was also expected to upgrade informal settlements and provide affordable rental housing, outstanding title deeds to beneficiaries of state-subsidised housing and temporary shelter to people affected by housing emergencies such as fires. The upgrading of informal settlements is intended to provide households with secure tenure and access to basic services such as water and sanitation. Through the Upgrading of Informal Settlements Programme, 67 548 households were upgraded in partnership with provinces and municipalities in 2017/18.

Human Settlements Vision 2030

Housing the poor was an ingredient of the department's three-part response to the State's Vision 2030 Strategy. "Gap housing" is a term that describes the shortfall or gap in the market between residential units supplied by the State and houses delivered by the private sector.

The gap housing market comprises people who typically earn between R3 500 and R15 000 per month, which is too little to enable them to participate in the private property market, yet too much to qualify for state assistance.

Gap housing is a policy that addresses the housing aspirations of people such as nurses, firefighters, teachers and members of the armed forces, who earn between R3 000 and R15 000 per month and therefore do not qualify for RDP houses and do not earn enough to obtain home loans.

Nationally, the houses were financially assisted by the National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC) through an intervention called Finance Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP), which gives all qualifying beneficiaries the certainty of being granted loans, bonds or mortgages by banks and other financial institutions.

Social housing

A key model for the delivery of affordable housing is social housing, which provides medium density, affordable, rental housing to low and middle income households. Social housing contributes to transforming urban spatial patterns as it promotes integration and densification in close proximity to economic and social amenities.

The DHS's social housing programme is largely funded through the restructuring capital grant, which is transferred from the Housing Development Finance programme to be administered by the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA).

The grant was expected to reach R1 billion by 2018/19 to fund the delivery of 17 333 social housing units, contributing to achieving the target of an additional 27 000 social housing units by 2019.

Housing entities

The department's housing entities include the:

- **National Home Builders Registration Council** (NHBRC), which represents the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes and to regulate the home building industry. The NHBRC also provides training and capacity building to promote and ensure compliance with technical standards in the home-building environment.
- **Community Schemes Ombud Service**, which provides a dispute-resolution service for community schemes; monitors and controls the quality of all governance documentation relating to sectional title schemes; and takes custody of, preserves and provides public access to scheme governance documentation.
- **Estate Agency Affairs Board**, which regulates, maintains and promotes the conduct of estate agents; issues certificates from the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund; prescribes the standard of education and training for estate agents; investigates complaints lodged against estate agents, and manages and controls the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund.
- **Housing Development Agency**, which identifies, acquires, holds, develops and releases state-owned and privately owned land for residential and community purposes; and project manages housing developments for the creation of sustainable human settlements.

- **NHFC**, which broadens and deepens access to affordable housing finance for low- to middle-income households by facilitating private-sector lending for housing purposes.
- **National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (NURCHA)**, which provides bridging finance to contractors building low to moderate income housing, infrastructure and community facilities.
- **Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF)**, which facilitates access to housing credit to low income rural households by providing wholesale finance through a network of retail intermediaries and community-based organisations.
- **SHRA**, which regulates the social housing sector, and ensures a sustainable and regulated flow of investment into the social housing sector in order to support the restructuring of urban spaces by providing capital grant to accredited social housing institutions.

The DHS was expected to finalise the consolidation of the NHFC, NURCHA and RHLF into a single human settlements development finance institution. Once established, the new institution is expected to provide more effective access to affordable housing finance.

Subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by government to qualifying beneficiaries for housing purposes. One of the DHS areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor. This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

According to Stats SA's GHS 2017, the percentage of households that received some form of government housing subsidy increased from 5,6% in 2002 to 13,6% in 2017.

A slightly higher percentage of female-headed households (17,3%) than male-headed household (11,0%) received subsidies. This is in line with government policies that give preference to households headed by individuals from vulnerable groups, including females, and individuals with disabilities.

Government Employees Housing Scheme (GEHS)

The GEHS was established in 2015/16 as part of resolutions adopted by government and labour representatives at the Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council. The scheme is intended to assist public service officials on salary levels 1 to 10 with collateral for access to home loans and home ownership.

The scheme was established in response to the housing finance and access gap that exists with households in the monthly bracket of R3 500 and R15 000, who continue to remain underserviced and excluded from accessing home loans in spite of their regular income and relatively secure employment.

People's Housing Process (PHP)

The PHP is people-driven and beneficiaries have a say in the process and can decide what type of housing should be built. It aims to deliver better human settlement outcomes based on community contribution and partnerships.

National Housing Needs Register (NHNR)

The NHNR is a central database that offers households the opportunity to register their need for adequate shelter by providing information about their current living conditions, household composition and to indicate the type of housing assistance they require from government.

Households are also able to update their information to ensure that their details are relevant to their current situation. Records of households that have registered their need on other systems/waiting lists are received from provincial human settlement departments and municipalities.

The records received by the DHS are validated before being added to the NHNR. The NHNR has the functionality that ensures that the allocation of housing opportunities that are created through the various programmes contained in the National Housing Code is done in a fair, transparent and auditable manner. This is done by selecting households from relevant geographical areas based on the agreed criteria, such as age, preference, employment and income status.

National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP)

Through the NUSP, the DHS aims, amongst others, to promote incremental upgrading and strengthen capacity of government and professional practitioners to implement community-based upgrading.

The NUSP was expected to provide project level technical support to 119 municipalities over the medium term for planning the upgrading of informal settlements.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

International Relations

In terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the President is ultimately responsible for the foreign policy and international relations of South Africa.

As such, it is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct state-to-state relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements.

International agreements that are not of a technical, administrative or executive nature will only bind the country after being approved by Parliament, which also approves the country's ratification of or accession to multilateral agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament for information purposes.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy.

The department's overall mandate is to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives. This is done by:

- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations;
- monitoring developments in the international environment;
- communicating government's policy positions;
- developing and advising government on policy options, and creating mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives;
- protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity;
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African businesses;
- sourcing developmental assistance; and
- assisting South African citizens abroad.

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) strategic objectives are to:

- protect and promote South African national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interactions;
- conduct and coordinate South Africa's international relations and promote its foreign policy objectives;
- monitor international developments and advise government on foreign policy and related domestic matters;
- contribute to the formulation of international law and enhance respect for its provisions;
- promote multilateralism to secure a rules-based international system;
- maintain a modern, effective department driven to pursue excellence; and
- provide a world-class and uniquely South African state protocol service.

Chapter 7 of the National Development Plan (NDP) details a vision for positioning South Africa to facilitate broad-based socioeconomic development and foster strong international ties.

Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework gives expression to this, and is directly aligned with the work of DIRCO.

Over the medium term, DIRCO intended to focus on: strengthening regional integration and the African Agenda; consolidating global economic, political and social relations; enhancing its operational capacity; and developing and managing infrastructure projects and properties.

Diplomatic and consular missions implement South Africa's foreign policy to enhance its international profile and serve as strategic mechanisms for the achievement of national interest.

Enhancing socio-economic diplomacy

To reflect the increasing influence of emerging economies in the multilateral trading system, over the MTEF period, South Africa aimed to consolidate South-South relations. As such, the department intended to continue leveraging South Africa's membership to groupings such as the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation, the G77, and the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa (BRICS) group of countries to advance its foreign policy objectives. In anticipation of growth in the African and Asian regions, South Africa took a conscious decision to expand and strengthen its diplomatic missions in the two regions.

As South Africa consolidated its political relations on the continent by expanding its diplomatic footprint through 47 embassies, high commissions and consulates general, the country has also rapidly advanced economic relations in Africa, through the expansion of trade volumes, investment portfolio and economic relations.

Africa has become a prime destination of South African-originated goods and services, especially value-added goods, which assists in contributing to the R198-billion trade surplus, creating much-needed jobs and opportunities for the people within the manufacturing, retail, fast-moving consumer goods, financial services and transport/logistics sectors.

The Southern African Development Community (SADC) accounts for approximately 80% of total trade with the continent.

Regarding Asia and the Middle East, South Africa's trade and investment in these regions have grown considerably and continue to do so. In 1994, trade with Asia and the Middle East combined was about R45 billion and has increased to about R760 billion for Asia and R116 billion with the Middle East. South Africa can achieve a trillion rand trade with this region by 2019.

There is a direct correlation between the growth of South Africa's diplomatic missions and the phenomenal expansion of its trade and investment relations on both the African continent and in Asia and the Middle East.

The same applies to the Americas and Europe. With additional economic diplomacy efforts and enhanced national coordination, South African trade with the world can reach R2 trillion by 2019.

As South Africa explores new markets, it continues to maintain close economic ties with the industrialised economies of the North, which provide, among others, preferential market access to some of South Africa's exports.

Enhancing the economic and political dialogue is an important part of South Africa's economic diplomacy strategy as they remain a primary source of foreign direct investment (FDI) and official development assistance (ODA) flows into South Africa.

DIRCO also uses international summits (BRICS, Group of Twenty (G20), SADC, Indian Ocean Rim Association (IORA) as well as State visits and Bilateral Consultation mechanisms to promote the trade and investment case for South Africa.

Foreign policy

South Africa's foreign policy outlook is based on its commitment to the values and ideals of Pan-Africanism, solidarity with people of the South and the need to cooperate with all peace-loving people across the globe in pursuit of shared prosperity and a just, equitable and rules-based international order.

The country's diplomacy of Ubuntu continues to place cooperation with partners as the thrust of its foreign policy endeavours above all forms of competition.

South Africa strives to address its domestic imperatives as enunciated in the NDP and national interest while taking into cognisance the needs and aspirations of others.

The country's diplomatic efforts over the past two decades include conflict resolution, prevention, mediation, peacekeeping and peacebuilding.

- **Africa** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Africa, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa has foreign representation in 47 diplomatic missions in Africa.

- **Asia and Middle East** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Asia and the Middle East, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa has foreign representation in 32 diplomatic missions in Asia and the Middle East.
- **Americas and Caribbean** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in the Americas and Caribbean, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa foreign representation in 16 diplomatic missions in the Americas and Caribbean.
- **Europe** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Europe, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa has foreign representation in 28 diplomatic missions in Europe.

Strengthening regional integration and the African Agenda

The department uses the NDP as an overarching vision for guiding South Africa's foreign policy and international relations programme.

Chapter 7 of the NDP emphasises the importance of regional integration, specifically in the SADC, which is South Africa's largest trade partner in Africa.

With the aim of partnering with the private sector to develop industry and value chains in the SADC, South Africa assumed the rolling one-year chairpersonship of the SADC.

African Union (AU)

Over the medium term, the DIRCO plans to continue making contributions towards operationalising the tripartite agreement between South Africa, Angola and the Democratic Republic of the Congo in support of the peace and security framework agreement for the Great Lakes region.

Through the department, South Africa will continue to support the AU Peace Fund and other efforts of the AU Peace and Security Council (AUPSC) in pursuit of lasting peace on the continent.

South Africa has served as a member of the AUPSC for two consecutive terms from 1 April 2014 to 31 March 2016 and 1 April 2016 to 31 April 2018, respectively South Africa's contributions to the AU for membership were expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.9%, from R200.1 million in 2017/18 to R251 million in 2020/21, mainly due to inflationary budget adjustments and revised membership contributions.

The department also plans to be involved in mobilising regional economic communities towards a continental free trade area; revitalising the New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD) on infrastructure development; and promoting good governance systems through the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM).

South Africa remains irrevocably committed to the realisation of the goals of Agenda 2063, Africa's blueprint and vision for an integrated, prosperous and peaceful continent. In this regard, South Africa supported the launch of both the Protocol on the Free Movement of Persons in Africa and the African Continental Free Trade Area, launched in January and March 2018 respectively, which are two of Agenda 2063's flagship programmes. These two initiatives are a manifestation of the Pan-African vision of continental unity and integration in line with South Africa's vision of a better Africa and a better world.

The AU's Agenda 2063, under the theme "The Africa We Want", seeks to chart a new development trajectory for Africa towards self-determination, freedom, progress and collective prosperity.

The first 10-year implementation plan of Agenda 2063 identifies the key outcomes by 2023. Agenda 2063's Flagship Programmes which seek to place the continent on a developmental path that will address Africa's key challenges of poverty are designed to achieve the following key deliverables, amongst others:

- Improving railway connectivity;
- Improving road infrastructure, sea ports and air transportation;
- Investing in a well-developed information and communications technology (ICT) and digital economy; and
- Developing agriculture and agro-processing.

The DIRCO will be involved in rationalising regional economic communities towards a Continental Free Trade Area, revitalising the NEPAD on infrastructure development, and promoting good governance systems through the APRM.

Among others, Agenda 2063 aspires to a prosperous Africa based on inclusive growth and sustainable development. It also seeks an integrated continent, politically united and based on the ideals of Pan-Africanism and the vision of Africa's Renaissance.

The AU Agenda includes the commitments to support railway and road infrastructure, power generation and distribution networks, industrial and technology parks and human resources development.

Agenda 2063 sets out a roadmap towards an Africa where women are empowered to play their rightful role in all spheres of life, and with full equality. This is in line with the AU heads of state decision to establish the Pan African Women's Organisation as a legal entity and a specialised agency of the AU.

Heads of State and Government and representatives of States and Governments met at the United Nations (UN) Headquarters in New York on 24 September 2018, at the Nelson Mandela Peace Summit, to reflect on global peace, in honour of the centenary of the birth of Nelson Mandela.

Africa Day

Africa Day is celebrated annually on 25 May within the African continent to mark the formation of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) on 25 May 1963 and the AU in 2002, as well as chart the progress made by the continent since then to advance democracy, peace, stability and socio-economic development.

The theme for Africa Month 2018 was "A Year of Nelson Mandela – Building a Better Africa and a Better World".

New Partnership for Africa's Development

NEPAD, an AU strategic framework for pan-African socio-economic development, is both a vision and a policy framework for Africa in the 21st century. NEPAD provides unique opportunities for African countries to take full control of their development agenda, to work more closely together, and to cooperate more effectively with international partners.

NEPAD manages a number of programmes and projects in six theme areas namely:

- agriculture and food security
- climate change and national resource management
- regional integration and infrastructure

- human development
- economic and corporate governance
- cross-cutting issues, including gender, capacity development and ICT.

Through NEPAD, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, information and communications technology, science and technology, infrastructure and education has improved the quality of life for millions of Africans.

South Africa and the SADC

In pursuit of promoting regional political and economic integration, South Africa assumed the Chairship of SADC in August 2017, under the theme: "Partnering with the Private Sector in Developing Industry and Regional Value Chains". During its Chairship, South Africa was working towards the implementation of the identified deliverables, which included:

- Control and management of the Fall Army Worm and other diseases, which will contribute towards addressing regional food security challenges.
- Enhancing capacity at the SADC Secretariat, including the identification of regional centres of excellence. This is geared towards improving the implementation of SADC strategic blueprints, with a primary focus on the Regional Industrialisation Strategy and Roadmap.
- The establishment of a regional Natural Gas Committee to promote the inclusion of gas in the regional energy mix and in the promotion of industrial development.
- Project Preparation and Development Facility, managed by the Development Bank of Southern Africa to take projects to bankability stage and therefore unlock opportunities that exist in the region (industrial and infrastructure development).
- The formulation of a nutritious instant and ready-to-mix product from indigenous food ingredients.

As Chair of SADC, South Africa has been involved with the SADC Organ in matters relating to the promotion of peace and security in the region as a whole. Furthermore, South Africa was expected to participate in SADC electoral observer missions, which will be covering the elections in the region for 2018, including in Zimbabwe, Madagascar and and the DRC.

South Africa has championed a "developmental regionalism" approach that combines market integration, cross-border infrastructure development, and policy coordination to diversify production and boost intra-African trade.

The country has identified the need for an appropriate international migration policy to maintain national security and foster socio-economic development. For this reason, the 2017 *White Paper on International Migration* was developed to guide a comprehensive review of South Africa's immigration and related legislation and policy over the medium term.

The aim of the review is to embrace migration as a healthy enabler for development while guarding sovereignty, peace and security.

The White Paper calls for strategic policy interventions in managing matters relating to admissions, residency, naturalisation, skilled migrants, ties with expatriates, economic migrants from the SADC, asylum seekers and refugees, and migrant integration.

South Africa and Africa

South Africa embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Africa, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value adding industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and the skills base. South Africa has foreign representation in 47 diplomatic missions in Africa.

Southern Africa

The southern Africa region remained one of the core focal areas of South Africa's strategic engagements on the African continent during the reporting period, through the holding of various structured bilateral mechanisms and high-level visits/engagements.

Former President Jacob Zuma paid a State Visit to Tanzania from 11 to 12 May 2017, which was preceded by the inauguration of the Binational Commission (BNC) between the two countries. The State Visit and BNC were aimed at enhancing South Africa's relations with Tanzania, while identifying new areas of potential cooperation.

During the State Visit and BNC, two Memoranda of Understanding (MoUs) were signed, the first in the field of transport, and the second in the field of biodiversity and conservation.

The BNC between South Africa and the DRC was held from 21 to 25 June 2017 in Pretoria and was co-chaired by former President Zuma and the President of the DRC, Mr Joseph Kabila. During the BNC, the respective heads of state called for the full implementation of the Grand Inga Treaty that was signed in Kinshasa on 29 October 2013. Further discussions were held on matters relating to peace and security in the region and advancing bilateral cooperation. The South Africa-Mozambique BNC was held from 22 to 25 August 2017 in Maputo.

The BNC provided an opportunity to review the status of bilateral relations between the fraternal countries, as both the co-chairs, former President Zuma and President Filipe Nyusi of Mozambique, noted the progress made in the implementation of agreements under the auspicious of the BNC, and called for further enhancement in relations across all sectors.

South Africa hosted the Second Session of the BNC with Zimbabwe from 28 September to 3 October 2017. The BNC proved to be a successful engagement, which resulted in the strengthening of relations between the two countries, particularly regarding economic relations, and the signing of five MoUs in the fields of cross-border coordination on frequency spectrum; information and communications technologies; energy; environment and conservation; and sports and recreation.

Former President Zuma undertook a Working Visit to Botswana for the Fourth Session of the BNC, which took place from 14 to 17 November 2017. During the BNC, the co-chairs, former President Zuma and President Seretse Khama Ian Khama, exchanged views on a wide range of bilateral, regional, continental and international issues of mutual interest.

An MoU on Cooperation in the Field of Tourism was signed during the BNC. During the reporting period, South Africa also held a Joint Commission for Cooperation (JCC) with Angola on 14 July 2017. The JCC, chaired at Ministerial level, resulted in the identification of common development areas, which will enhance economic value in sectors such as agriculture, fisheries, industry and tourism.

A JCC was also held with Zambia from 9 to 11 October 2017 in Lusaka, which reviewed the implementation of bilateral agreements in accordance with the JCC agreement. Upon the conclusion of the JCC with Zambia, former President Zuma undertook a State Visit to Zambia from 11 to 13 October 2017.

During the State Visit, former President Zuma and President Edgar Lungu officially launched the OR Tambo House in Lusaka as a national heritage site. In addition, the heads of state decided that the JCC would be elevated to a BNC to be chaired at Heads of State level. Additional agreements between the two countries were signed in the field of tourism, as well as with state entities, SABC and Transnet.

In pursuit of advancing South Africa's Economic Diplomacy interests, a Business Forum was held on 12 October 2017, which sought to explore business opportunities between the two countries as well as improve trade and investment relations.

The then newly elected President of Angola, Mr João Lourenço, undertook a State Visit to South Africa from 24 from 25 November 2017. This was a significant State Visit, as President

Lourenço chose to visit South Africa for his first international trip as Head of State, thus underpinning the fraternal relations between the two countries.

During the reporting period, the former Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, received her Angolan counterpart, Mr Manuel Domingos Augusto,

The Minister of External Relations of Angola for an incoming Working Visit on 9 November 2017, during which the ministers discussed a number of issues relating to bilateral relations and geopolitical and security developments in the region, continent and globally.

Former Minister Nkoana-Mashabane participated in a Ministerial Meeting of the Tripartite Mechanisms for Dialogue and Cooperation between Angola, the DRC and South Africa, held in Kinshasa, DRC, on 3 July 2017.

The aim of the meeting was to chart a way forward to convene the Fourth Council of Ministers Meeting of the Tripartite Mechanisms.

The former Minister also attended the Eighth High-Level Meeting of the Regional Oversight Mechanism of the Peace, Security and Cooperation Framework for the DRC, held in Brazzaville,

Republic of Congo, from 17 to 19 October 2017. The meeting was aimed at discussing the security situation in the Great Lakes Region.

Upon his election as President of the Republic of South Africa in February 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa undertook a number of visits to the region to pay courtesy calls on neighbouring heads of state, with the aim of further strengthening and consolidating South Africa's historic bilateral relationships.

President Ramaphosa paid courtesy call visits on President Lourenço of Angola and President Hage Geingob of Namibia on 2 March 2018; and former President Seretse Khama Ian Khama of Botswana on 3 March 2018. The visits formed part of a long-standing tradition in the region, whereby newly elected heads of state pay courtesy calls on the neighbouring countries.

East Africa

The East Africa region provides South Africa with great opportunities in terms of strengthening bilateral political relations and expanding the country's Economic Diplomacy footprint. The region is also a key variable in terms of the continent's peace and security dynamics and migration issues, while at the same time, it boasts huge potential in advancing South Africa's agenda regarding Operation Phakisa and the Oceans/Blue Economy.

President Uhuru Kenyatta paid a Working Visit to South Africa from 11 to 13 January 2018. The Working Visit was aimed at strengthening the bilateral relations between South Africa and Kenya as the meetings provided an opportunity for both countries to address matters of migration, trade and investment, which would form part of a proposed future State Visit to be conducted by President Kenyatta to South Africa in the 2018/19 financial year. During the visit, President Kenyatta also paid a courtesy call on the newly elected leader of the governing party, President Ramaphosa.

The South Africa-Seychelles JCC meeting was held in Pretoria from 8 to 9 March 2018. The JCC, chaired at Deputy Minister level, provided an opportunity for both countries to discuss the status of bilateral relations and finding ways of enhancing economic partnerships.

South Africa hosted the Senior Officials' Meeting with Ethiopia from 5 to 6 March 2018 in Pretoria, chaired at Deputy Director-General level. The meeting reviewed the progress made in terms of agreements signed, while also discussing bilateral relations and developments on the continent.

During the reporting period, President Hery Rajaonarimapianina of Madagascar undertook a Working Visit to South Africa and held discussions with former President Zuma in Cape Town on 1 November 2017. The meeting discussed matters relating to the political developments in Madagascar and the prospects for 2018 ahead of a scheduled election.

Former Minister Nkoana-Mashabane also received her Comorian counterpart, the Minister of

Foreign Affairs of the Union of Comoros, Minister Mohamed El-Amine Souef, on 6 November 2017 in Pretoria. The meeting discussed the ongoing political developments in Comoros and the proposed Comorian National Conference, which was set to review, among others, the Indian Ocean island nation's Constitution.

West Africa

West Africa is a dynamic region politically and economically, and remains a key area for South Africa's strategic engagements and focus on the continent, especially regarding matters of peace and security, trade, investment and natural resource exploration.

Former President Zuma received former President Ellen Johnson Sirleaf of Liberia, who undertook a State Visit to South Africa on 11 August 2017 in Pretoria.

The heads of state committed to prioritise areas of bilateral cooperation. In this regard, both countries committed to expediting the finalisation and signing of the Agreement between the two countries on the Exemption of Visas for the Holders of Diplomatic and Official Passports; as well as the Joint Trade and Investment Commission, which will enable both countries to service the MoU on Economic and Technical Cooperation.

President Macky Sall of Senegal undertook a State Visit to South Africa on 24 October 2017 in Cape Town and held discussion with former President Zuma. The State Visit provided an opportunity for both countries to consolidate and strengthen bilateral relations and enhance cooperation, which culminated in the elevation of the Joint Commission for Bilateral Cooperation between South Africa and Senegal from Senior Officials to Ministerial level.

North and Central Africa

The North and Central Africa region remained an important area of consideration in terms of the complex and broader geopolitical and security environment on the continent. The region poses great potential economically, but also has its limitations from within the spectre of peace and security.

During the AU Ministerial Conference for an African Agenda on Migration, held in Rabat, Morocco, from 8 to 9 January 2018, former Minister Nkoana-Mashabane met with the Minister of Foreign Affairs of Morocco, Mr Nasser Bourita, on the margins of the conference.

The meeting provided an opportunity for both ministers to discuss a number of issues related to migration and its effects on the continent, as well as the state of bilateral relations between the two countries.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Lindiwe Sisulu, hosted her Saharawi counterpart, Minister Bulahi Sid, Foreign Minister of the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic (Western Sahara) on 29 March 2018 in Pretoria for the signing of the MoU on Technical Assistance and the Exchange of Notes on Humanitarian Assistance to the Western Saharawi Refugee Camps. The MoU forms part of the political and humanitarian assistance that the South African Government is extending to the people of Western Sahara.

Asia and Middle East, East Asia and Oceania

Countries of East Asia and Oceania have cooperation agreements with South Africa in wide-ranging scientific and technical areas of expertise and have become important skills-development partners. Japan, the Republic of Korea (ROK) and Australia contributed substantially to the skills development priority of South Africa.

Japan has increased its total number of Africa Business Education students intake from South Africa to 103 Master's degree candidates – all linked to completing internships at Japanese companies afterwards – while the ROK has offered South Africa numerous skills-development training opportunities.

The Japan International Cooperation Agency has agreed to launch a three-year Specialised

Artisans Training pilot project for South Africans, focusing on the automotive and energy sectors, in July 2018, and to be rolled out to South African colleges, thereafter.

From 2016 to 2017, South Africa's total volumes of bilateral trade with Japan, the ROK and Australia, respectively, all increased from R88,3 billion to R93,2 billion (in South Africa's favour); from R34,3 billion to R39,1 billion (in South Africa's favour); and from R21,8 billion to R25,3 billion (marginally in Australia's favour, by R1 billion).

In April 2017, South Africa launched the South Africa-China People-to-People Exchange Mechanism, which has further added significance to the already existing comprehensive strategic partnership between the two countries.

In addition to government-to-government engagements, it has created an opportunity for non-government entities across academia, business and civil society to interact more frequently through organised structures. During the launch, the co-chairs witnessed the signing of six agreements and MoUs.

China remained South Africa's number one trading partner globally. The volume of bilateral trade between the two countries increased year-on-year from R294 billion (US$25,42 billion) in 2015 to R300 billion (US$25,93 billion) in 2016. The total trade figure for 2017 stood at R319 billion (US$27,57 billion).

South Africa continued to work towards increasing exports to China and in October 2017, became the first African country to export beef to China – a positive development, which indicated great progress with regard to the opening of markets for each other's products.

Central, South and Southeast Asia

The countries of Central, South and Southeast Asia provide potential for the execution of Economic Diplomacy initiatives, specifically in advancing cooperation in the Blue Economy in the fields of aquaculture, ship-building, ports management, agro-processing, the defence industry and skills training opportunities.

These opportunities are in line with South Africa's strategic objectives as outlined in the various iterations of the country's Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), including the Ninth IPAP iteration as well as for supporting the Black Industrialists Programme in manufacturing. During the 2017/18 financial year, South Africa continued to partner with countries in the region and a number of interventions yielded desirable outcomes.

South Africa and India maintained a Strategic Partnership that spans multiple fora and areas of cooperation aligned to South Africa's national priorities and global reform agenda. New areas of cooperation were in the following sectors: renewable energy, higher education and audiovisual co-production.

Cooperation between the national archives and health is being explored. South Africa and India continue to cooperate closely at a multilateral level, specifically within Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS); Indian Ocean Rim Association (IORA); and India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA).

Total bilateral trade between South Africa and India has increased steadily over the past few years and grew from R93 billion in 2016 to R107 billion in 2017. South African exports to India increased significantly from R47 billion in 2016 to R55 billion in 2017, with the trade balance in South Africa's favour. Investment by India in South Africa has grown to R120 billion and Indian companies employ approximately 18 000 South Africans.

Tourism has also shown an increase with 97 921 Indian visitors entering South Africa in 2017, up from 95 377 during 2016. In the rest of South Asia, South Africa has made significant progress in improving exports and developing new areas of cooperation.

Bilateral trade with Bangladesh grew from R2,8 billion in 2016 to R3,2 billion in 2017, with South Africa enjoying a trade surplus of R1,2 billion in 2017. Similarly, trade with Sri Lanka grew from R2,6 billion in 2016 to R3,2 billion in 2017, with South Africa enjoying a trade surplus of R2,3 billion in 2017.

South African cooperation with Thailand made significant progress, particularly in the area of trade, with Thailand becoming South Africa's largest trading partner in Southeast Asia – albeit with South Africa experiencing a large trade deficit with Thailand.

During the reporting period, bilateral trade totalled R41 billion in 2017 with imports at R33,2 billion and exports at R8,2 billion. Areas of cooperation that have seen positive momentum include agriculture, defence and information and communications technology (ICT). Furthermore, the Third Meeting of the Joint Trade Committee between South Africa and Indonesia was held in Pretoria on 21 July 2017 and explored measures to improve trade and investment.

Engagement with the Philippines also resulted in the expansion of technical cooperation in various sectors, including mining, trade, agriculture and the Blue Economy and a decision to upgrade the Bilateral Consultative Forum to the level of Under Secretary/Deputy Minister.

The Middle East

For the period under review, the pursuit of South Africa's domestic priorities in the Middle East region, in particular with countries of the Levant, perceived as one of the most diverse and complex regions globally, continued to face widening and increasingly intersecting conflicts, having a deleterious impact on the region in all spheres — all of which pose serious challenges to international peace and security.

The conflict between Palestinian and Israel feeds into the wider regional dynamics and has impacted negatively on peace, economic development, socio-political progression and security throughout the region. For South Africa, the question of Palestine remained at the core of the situation in the Middle East and the Middle East Peace Process stayed as one of the central issues shaping international relations within the region and the world.

South Africa remained firmly convinced that continued dialogue in support of a peaceful solution would be the only viable option that could effectively address the issue. Long-term peace, security and prosperity for both Israelis and Palestinians can only be achieved through a negotiated two-state solution.

The political peace process, which was initiated 69 years ago, is at a standstill and the situation has become increasingly tense and dangerously fragile. South Africa, through respective international platforms and engagements, continued to encourage both sides to resume the peace process, for a comprehensive, just and lasting resolution of the Palestinian issue.

Likewise, South Africa remained seized with the deteriorating humanitarian and security situation in Syria and continually used the available UN multilateral platforms to call for a Syrian-led political dialogue and solution. The international community should seek a political solution to the situation in Syria as a matter of priority, continue to support the UN as the main channel for mediation and promote a comprehensive, just and careful resolution of the situation in Syria.

South Africa's engagement with the Gulf region comprising countries of the Gulf Cooperation Council, has focused on regular high-level interaction and the continued management of relations through structured bilateral mechanisms.

The primary focus of South Africa's strategic engagement with the region has leant towards an economic agenda, while still retaining the political dynamic, given the increasing politicisation currently underway in the Middle East at large.

South Africa's intention is to continue to consolidate and elevate relations through regular bilateral mechanisms and fora that will contribute to strengthening economic, trade and investment linkages and ensuring the country's energy security.

In April 2017, former President Zuma hosted the Emir of the State of Qatar, His Highness Sheikh Tamim Bin Hamad Al-Thani, who was on a two-day State Visit to South Africa. The visit made significant progress in solidifying the relations – particularly business-to-business interaction.

There was also a very positive engagement during the 13th Joint Commission, held on 23 October 2017, which advanced this dynamic relationship to further solidify the cooperation between the states. It was co-chaired by Minister Nkoana-Mashabane and Dr Mohammad Javad Zarif (IranianForeign Minister).

Americas and Europe

North America

South Africa has cordial relations with the countries of North America, managed through high-level structured bilateral mechanisms, such as the South Africa-United States (US) Strategic Dialogue at Ministerial level, and the South Africa-Canada Annual Consultations at Director-General level.

The US is South Africa's third-largest trading partner and a major source of development cooperation. Bilateral trade increased from R95,6 billion in 2010 to a high of R161,5 billion in 2017. South Africa was the largest trade partner for the USA in sub-Saharan Africa, accounting for 34% of the total trade between sub-Saharan Africa and the US.

The US is the largest single source of FDI in South Africa with over US$50 billion. The approximate value of the development assistance that is received annually from the US is US$520 million.

There is continued support for health cooperation under the President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief Framework. South Africa continued to engage the US Administration with a view to enhancing political, economic, regional and multilateral cooperation in areas of mutual interest.

In particular, South Africa continued to market the country as a favourable trade and investment destination and to attract support for key priorities, including industrialisation and regional integration, education, capacity-building and skills development, energy, and science and technology.

South Africa and Canada continued working on strengthening and diversifying bilateral economic ties, while enhancing cooperation in the sectors of mining and mineral beneficiation, aquaculture, transportation, environment, ICT and arts and culture.

Western Europe

Western European states remained among the key trading partners for South Africa. According to figures from the South African Reserve Bank for end 2016, Western European countries accounted for R1,18 trillion in global FDI stock in South Africa while South African FDI into these countries constituted R665 billion of the total global stock.

Consequently, bilateral economic cooperation was high on the agendas of the various structured consultations and high-level engagements undertaken during the reporting period with The Netherlands, France, Ireland, Switzerland, Spain and Portugal.

Science and technology was one of the key drivers of the bilateral relationship with Western European partners and has created many opportunities for South African researchers to access funding through European Union (EU) mechanisms.

The majority of Western European partners are moving from an aid approach to an economic development cooperation approach with South Africa. This assistance has generally been focused around the NDP goals and priorities, e.g. job creation and economic growth.

Focal areas for the Western European countries included environmental affairs, energy, agriculture, infrastructure development and skills development. The number of educational scholarship and training opportunities in Western Europe had remained steady and even increased in some countries.

The trade balance between South Africa and the Western European states is balanced and has evolved to more high-value manufactured goods and away from primary resources. Western European countries also provided the majority of South Africa's tourist arrivals outside of the SADC region and have continued to show significant growth since 2016, leading to job creation in the tourism industry.

The United Kingdom and Germany are in the top 10 leading countries for overseas tourist arrivals and the Western Europe region as a whole contributed nearly 1,7 million tourists in 2017.

South Africa and France maintained close cooperative bilateral relations in various sectors across a wide-ranging area, covering the promotion of peace and security, human rights, democracy, the rule of law and sustainable development.

These interests, values and common objectives are underpinned by a strategic bilateral, regional and multilateral relationship like the AU-EU Partnership, the EU-SADC Partnership, the UN and the G20. These structured relations were managed through a Forum for Political Dialogue. Various expert-level bilateral committees in the fields of strategic defence, the environment, education and training, transport, energy, arts and culture and health meet regularly to review progress.

Challenges and imperatives posed by illicit financial flows, terrorism, violent extremism and, most importantly, climate change were discussed. During the annual Bilateral Consultations with Spain and Portugal in 2017, discussions focused on areas such as small business development, science and technology, tourism, water management, renewable energy as well as trade and investment.

Spanish renewable energy companies are already establishing solar and wind energy farms in the Northern and Eastern Cape, respectively. Following high-level consultations with South Africa, Switzerland pledged 55 million Swiss Francs with the aim of contributing to inclusive and green growth in South Africa that will create jobs, ensure resilience and reduce disparities over a four-year period.

The South African Government's efforts of creating a better life for all its citizens by aligning foreign development assistance to South Africa's national priorities have been further strengthened through the conclusion of an agreement with the Flanders Regional Government, which will oversee the implementation of the Country Specific Paper (CSP) III on Climate Adaptation.

The primary focus of the CSP III is on climate change, particularly climate adaptation and the capacity-building needed by South Africa to move to an efficient Green Economy that is both sustainable and circular (recycling centric).

It is particularly important that South Africa transitions to a sustainable Green Economy where there is a continuous cycle of use, recycle and re-use, which will contribute to job creation in the Green Economy sphere.

This project is aligned with the South African Government's Medium Term Strategic Framework 2014 – 2019, in the context of the country's respective commitments to the UN 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change and its Paris Agreement.

The project is scheduled to run for the period 2017 – 2021 to the value of €5 million per year. The Government of Flanders has also signed an MoU on the Development of a Social Economy Policy for South Africa in collaboration with the International Labour Organisation in January 2017.

The aim is the narrowing of economic and social inequality in the context of sustainable and fair economic, social and ecological development.

Central and Eastern Europe, Nordics and Baltic states

The Nordic countries remained very important cooperation partners for South Africa in the fields of science and technology, space technology, environment, renewable energy, Blue Economy, education, capacity-building, skills development, water waste management and gender equality.

A number of Energy and Environment Partnership Programme projects are being implemented by Finland throughout the southern and East African region.

The programme is geared to focus onpoverty reduction by promoting inclusive and job-creating Green Economy projects and by improving energy security. Phase III of these projects commenced in

January 2018. The South Africa-Denmark Senior Officials Consultations took place in Copenhagen on 21 November 2017 and was co-hosted by the Director-General of the DIRCO, Mr Kgabo Mahoai, and his counterpart, Mr Ulrik Vestergaard Knudsen.

Outcomes included cooperation in science and technology, research, education and innovation, renewable energy, integrated water resource management, water treatment, capacity-building and institutional strengthening.

Cooperation between the Danish Dalum Agricultural Business College and the KwaZulu-Natal province was initiated in 2015. The ongoing course offers students a combination of theory and practice on farm management.

The Department of Water and Sanitation is at an implementing stage of three thematic areas of the South Africa-Denmark MoU on Cooperation in Water Management, namely, Urban Water, Ground Water and Water Use Efficiency.

South Africa and Sweden agreed to extend the existing scholarship programme until 2021. Preference is given to students from formerly disadvantaged universities and women.

The Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Luwellyn Landers, hosted his Norwegian counterpart, Ms Marianne Hagen, State Secretary of Foreign Affairs, in Pretoria on 23 March 2018 for high-level consultations. Areas for cooperation in this regard include science and technology, research and higher education, peace and mediation, and solutions to marine waste.

Norway also supported the newly established Fisheries Law Enforcement Academy at Nelson Mandela University (Fishforce). The academy offers training to officers in South African law-enforcement agencies.

South Africa and Norway have also signed a new framework programme for joint research cooperation, referred to as the South Africa-Norway Research Cooperation, focusing on the Blue Economy, climate change, the environment and sustainable energy. The programme will run over a period of five years, starting from 2018 to 2023.

The Gertrude Shope Annual Dialogue Forum on Conflict Resolution and Peacemaking was hosted on 3 and 4 August 2017 at DIRCO and included 120 participants in the Women's Capacity-Building Programme.

High-level political engagements within the region during the course of the past year included the 15th Session of the Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation with Russia (ITEC), held during October 2017 in Moscow. Key discussions included, among others, South Africa's priority development areas in energy, skills development, mineral beneficiation, and market access. The ITEC co-chairs, former Minister Nkoana-Mashabane and Minister Sergey Donskoy, met on 7 February 2018 in Cape Town to review progress made since the 14th South Africa-Russia ITEC session in light of the postponement.

Deputy Minister Landers hosted his Belarusian counterpart, Mr Andrei Dapkiunas, Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs of the Republic of Belarus, in Pretoria on 22 March 2018 for political consultations.

Areas for potential industrial investment by Belarus into South Africa were discussed, including a commitment of renewed impetus regarding future bilateral engagements between the two countries. During the consultations, the 25 years of diplomatic relations between the two countries were celebrated with an exchange of letters from the respective ministers.

Relations with Turkey have since 2005 been coordinated through the South Africa-Turkey Joint Economic Commission (JEC), co-chaired by the ministers of Trade and Industry. The primary objective of the JEC is to promote and deepen bilateral trade and economic cooperation between the two countries.

The priority sectors for the JEC are agriculture and agri-industries, automotives, infrastructure, energy and construction services, mineral resources, textile and clothing, and tourism. The last JEC meeting took place in October 2017, chaired by the Minister of Trade and Industry and Turkish

Minister of Education.

High-level engagements took place in the region with Poland (Political Consultations at Deputy Minister level) in May and November 2017. A priority outcome was the agreement by the deputy ministers to inaugurate the South Africa-Poland Joint Commission on Economic Cooperation as a vehicle for advancing the Economic Diplomacy objectives of both countries. The political consultations with the Czech Republic were postponed to 2018 due to Presidential elections in that country.

In May 2017, the South Africa-Hungary Senior Officials' Meeting, co-chaired by Deputy Director-General: Americas and Europe, Ms Yolisa Maya, and Deputy Secretary of State: Opening to the South, Ambassador Szilveszter Bus, was held in Pretoria. During the same visit, an MoU on Water Management was signed between South Africa and Hungary, paving the way for cooperation with Hungary in the area of water management.

The first round of recipients of the Hungary's scholarships (Under the MoU on Higher Education and Training) commenced their studies in September 2017. The MoU affords 100 fully funded scholarships to South African students at undergraduate and postgraduate level in South Africa's scarce skills fields for the next three years.

Latin America and the Caribbean

South Africa maintained cordial relations with countries in the region through structured bilateral mechanisms and high-level engagements, in pursuit of South Africa's national priorities, with particular focus on expanding economic ties with the region. Countries of Latin America and the Caribbean view South Africa as a priority partner and gateway to the continent.

South Africa continued to build on existing solid relations with Cuba to explore further opportunities for development, particularly in cooperation in education, defence, science and technology, agriculture, health services, infrastructure development, housing and water and sanitation.

South Africa's health workforce capacity has been increased through the Nelson Mandela/Fidel Castro Medical Training Programme since its inception in 1996. About 2 700 South African students are currently studying medicine in Cuba under the Extended Health Cooperation Agreement signed in 2012. Some 591 qualified medical doctors have been trained and have been distributed in various public health facilities throughout the country.

In 2017/18, the National Department of Health was expecting the return of 800 South African students who completed their medical training in Cuba. At the same time, also in terms of the expanded agreement, about 400 Cuban doctors were delivering their services, often in the most remote parts of South Africa.

South Africa received a Working Visit by Minister Aloysio Nunes Ferreira, Minister of External Relations of the Federative Republic of Brazil, in May 2017. The Minister was accompanied by a Brazilian business delegation that included the Brazilian Agency for the Promotion of Exports and Investments and National Confederation of Industries.

They were joined by the South African counterpart institutions. The engagement resulted in a positive exchange of information and best practices which further promoted trade and investment opportunities between the two countries.

The Brazilian Business Mission was followed by an Agri-Business Mission to Brazil that took place in June 2017 in the federal states of Parana and Sâo Paulo, aimed at strengthening the agricultural value chains as part of contributions to implement the NDP.

Trade between South Africa and Peru has continued to grow, particularly in the mining sector. South African companies active in mining-related activities in Peru include Anglo American, and Gold Fields as well as the mining safety company, NOSA.

International bodies

Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa

South Africa assumed Chairship of BRICS, for the second time since being invited to join in 2011, on 1 January 2018 until 31 December 2018. President Ramaphosa chaired the seminal 10th BRICS Summit at the Sandton International Convention Centre in Johannesburg from 25 to 27 July 2018 under the theme: "BRICS in Africa: Collaboration for Inclusive Growth and Shared Prosperity in the 4th Industrial Revolution".

The summit was also attended by leaders invited for the BRICS-Plus Dialogue, namely Argentina, Jamaica and Turkey and heads of state and government invited for the Africa Outreach Dialogue, namely Rwanda, Uganda, Togo, Gabon, Madagascar, Senegal, Namibia, Angola, Malawi, Mozambique, Zambia, Zimbabwe and Botswana, as well as representatives from Lesotho, Democratic Republic of Congo, Egypt, Tanzania and Seychelles.

The summit was an occasion for the BRICS leaders to re-emphasise the importance of global collaboration by all countries on the basis of equality within a reformed and democratised global public order, including a more democratic UN, inclusive of the UNSC and related multilateral institutions.

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA)

IBSA is a coalition of the south that has facilitated dialogue at a level previously unimaginable. Development cooperation, along with the views on tackling socio-economic distress and trading among the three nations distinguishes IBSA from BRICS. All the IBSA members are democracies and can discuss issues which cannot be discussed in BRICS summits.

The forum provides the three countries with a platform to engage in discussions for cooperation in fields such as agriculture, trade, culture and defence. South Africa assumed the Chair of the Indian Ocean Rim Association (IORA) from October 2017 until October 2019.

This provides the country with an opportunity to build on the Jakarta Summit outcomes and propel the implementation of the IORA Action Plan (2017 – 2021). Importantly, the country continued to focus on enhancing the institutional mechanisms necessary to advance important priorities for South Africa and the region.

These include but are not limited to women's economic empowerment, maritime safety and security, the Blue Economy and tourism.

United Nations politics, peace and security

South Africa participated in the Regular Session of the 72nd Session of the UN General Assembly (UNGA72). The annual UNGA session commenced with the customary high-level General Debate, which was held in New York from 19 to 25 September 2017.

As a keen proponent of the value of multilateralism, South Africa strove to achieve a number of objectives, which included defending the primacy of multilateralism; advocating for stronger coordination between the AU and the UN, especially in the resolution of conflicts in Africa; lobbying for South Africa's candidature for a non-permanent seat on the UN Security Council (UNSC) for the period 2019 to 2020; and highlighting the primacy and centrality of the 2030 Agenda 2030 for Sustainable Development and the Paris Climate Change Agreement.

On the margins of UNGA72, South Africa participated in high-level, inside events of the Committee of African Heads of State and Government on Climate Change; the High-level Meeting convened by the UN Secretary-General on the Prevention of Sexual Exploitation and Abuse by the UN staff and peacekeepers; the signing of the Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons; and the Open Debate of the UNSC on the Reform of UN Peacekeeping Operations.

South Africa also used to opportunity of the General Debate to host a reception commemorating the OR Tambo centenary. On 20 September 2017, South Africa signed the Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons, which reflected South Africa's continued commitment towards the achievement of a world free from the existential threat posed by nuclear weapons and ensuring that nuclear energy is used for peaceful purposes only.

The adoption of this treaty on 7 July 2017 followed an inclusive negotiating process in which South Africa played a prominent role. It is widely regarded as a historic achievement and represents a shift from the nuclear order ushered in by the use of nuclear weapons in 1945.

The role played by South Africa in the Organisation for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons (OPCW) has likewise been informed by the belief in diplomacy in the settlement of disputes and in upholding the rule of law at an international level.

In this regard, South Africa continued to work towards ensuring that the decisions of the OPCW Executive Council are consistent with the provisions of the Chemical Weapons Convention and uphold the principle of multilateralism.

UNGA and UNSC

Then President Zuma led the South African delegation to the 71st Session of the UNGA 71, which took place in New York in the USA from 19 to 25 September 2016 under the theme: "The Sustainable Development Goals: A Universal Push to Transform Our World".

The General Debate presented an opportunity for member states to take stock of the effectiveness of the UN and deliberations focused on UN reform, including on the revitalisation of the UNGA; improvement of the work of the Economic and Social Council; and most importantly, the substantive reform of the UNSC to expand its membership in both the permanent and non-permanent categories.

This was also the final General Debate of the former Secretary-General, Mr Ban Ki-moon, whose term ended on 31 December 2016.

Commonwealth

The modern Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 54 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes both developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

The NAM, with its 120 member states, is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

The NAM consists of 120 member states. South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role in NAM deliberations and meetings ever since.

Group of Twenty

South Africa is a member of the G20, which consists of 19 countries, including the EU. G20 members have been meeting regularly since 1999 to discuss global economic policy coordination.

The G20 was conceptualised to stabilise and strengthen the global economy, by bringing together the major advanced and emerging market economies. These economies together represent around 85% of global GDP, 80% of global trade and two-thirds of the world's population.

South Africa's participation in the G20 is aimed at advancing the national agenda to create a better South Africa and contribute to a better and safer Africa and a better world. The country's participation in the G20 is to provide strategic foresight in establishing an economic and international policy platform that will drive and negotiate the best possible outcomes for South Africa, Africa and the developing world.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is a member of the WHO, whose goal is to build a better, healthier future for people all over the world.

New Development Bank (NDB)

The BRICS NDB opened its headquarters in Shanghai, China, on 21 July 2015. Together with its regional office in South Africa, the African Regional Centre, and the Contingent Reserve Arrangement, the NDB constitutes the first formal BRICS financial institutions.

The purpose of the NDB is to mobilize resources for infrastructure and sustainable development projects in BRICS and other emerging market economies, and developing countries to complement the existing efforts of multilateral and regional financial institutions for global growth and development.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Justice and Correctional Service

The responsibilities of both the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJ&CD) and the Department of Correctional Services (DCS) are to ensure a just, peaceful and safe society.

Department of Justice and Constitutional Development

The DoJ&CD derives its mandate from a number of acts, in addition to the mandate it derives from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. These Acts and the constitutional framework assign functions to the department, such as the:

- establishment and functioning of magistrates' courts and Specialised Courts;
- appointment of judges and other judicial officers, their conditions of service, discipline and training;
- establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU),
- conduct of criminal proceedings, the investigation of organised crime and corruption, and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means;
- establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule making;
- appointment of masters of the high courts and the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates; the regulation and provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments; the promotion, protection and enforcement of certain human rights; the protection of vulnerable groups; and support to Chapter 9 institutions.

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages that by 2030, all South Africans should feel safe at home, at school and at work, and enjoy a community life free of fear. This vision is expressed in terms of Outcome 3 (all people in South Africa are and feel safe) of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework, with which the work of the DoJ&CD is closely aligned.

Over the medium term, the department intended to focus on strengthening its efforts to transform the justice system by developing and implementing policies that would bring about improved access to justice, improving the efficiency of the criminal justice system through modernising and integrating information systems and related business processes, transforming state legal services to strengthen the capability of the state to manage litigation, and protecting vulnerable groups.

Dealing with fraud and corruption

In order to better coordinate the fight against corruption, the DoJCD has collaborated with the SIU; South African Revenue Service; Public Protector (PP); Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Commission; Competition Commission and Independent Police Investigative Directorate.

In line with the NDP, the department, through the courts and the NPA, as part of the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster and the government-wide Anti-Corruption Task Team, put plans together to decisively deal with the scourge of corruption.

In 2017/18, some 213 government officials were convicted for corruption or offences related to corruption against a target of 210, whilst 37 persons were convicted of corruption or offences related to corruption where the amount involved was more than R5 million.

Pretoria Gallows Exhumation Project

The Pretoria Gallows Exhumation Project, which started in 2016, continued into the 2017/18 financial year. Of the remains of 83 people identified for this project, 46 remains have been exhumed, with 32 of these completed in the 2017/18 financial year. The department was expected to finalise the exhumation project in the 2018/19 financial year.

Office of the Chief Justice (OCJ)

The OCJ was established in August 2010 to:

- ensure that the Chief Justice can properly execute the mandate as both the head of the Constitutional Court and the head of the Judiciary;
- enhance the institutional, administrative and financial independence of the OCJ; and
- improve organisational governance and accountability, and the effective and efficient use of resources.

The courts

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court in Johannesburg is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is situated on a historical site called Constitution Hill in a building specially designed to reflect the values of the new constitutional democracy.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all matters other than constitutional ones. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the SCA, and 23 other judges of appeal. The SCA has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court.

Decisions of the SCA are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions.

High courts

A high court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area. These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty. Except where a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

There are 13 high courts: the Eastern Cape High courts in Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, Mthatha and Bhisho; the Free State High Court in Bloemfontein; the North Gauteng High Court in Pretoria; the South Gauteng High Court in Johannesburg; the KwaZulu-Natal High courts in Pietermaritzburg and Durban; the Limpopo High Court in Thohoyandou; the Northern Cape High Court, Kimberley; the North West High Court, Mafikeng; and the Western Cape High Court in Cape Town.

The following specialist high courts exercise national jurisdiction:

- The Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court in Braamfontein, Gauteng, which adjudicate over labour disputes and hear labour appeals, respectively.
- The Land Claims Court, in Randburg, Gauteng, which hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws.
- The Competition Appeal Court, situated in Cape Town, which deals with appeals from the Competition Tribunal.
- The Electoral Court, situated in Bloemfontein, which sits mainly during elections to deal with associated disputes.

- The Tax Court, situated in Pretoria, which deals with tax-related matters, including non-compliance with tax obligations.

Regional courts
Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a regional court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. There are nine regional court presidents and 351 regional court magistrates.

Magistrates' courts
Magistrates' courts form an important part of the judicial system as it is where ordinary people come into contact with the justice system daily. Besides the 43 new courts, the department has refurbished and equipped a further 24 branch courts and elevated them into proper courts.

Small Claims Courts
Small Claims Courts offer members of the public a quicker and easier way of resolving disputes that involve amounts limited to R15 000 and they can do so without the need for a legal representative.

The department continued to support and strengthen these courts. For the 2017/18 financial year, six new Small Claims Courts were established in Warden, Steynsrus, Petrus Steyn, Memel and Edenville in the Free State and Colenso in KwaZulu-Natal, bringing the total number to 411 Small Claims Courts countrywide by 31 March 2018.

In addition, nine inactive Small Claims Courts were revived between 1 April 2017 and 31 March 2018, and 14 inactive Advisory Boards were revived in the same period. A total of 98 additional commissioners were appointed during 2017/18 to preside in the courts. In addition, 148 new Advisory Board members were appointed to assist with the functioning of the courts.

Equality courts
Equality courts are courts designed to deal with matters covered by the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act of 2000, also known as the Equality Act. Members of the public bring to the court matters such as unfair discrimination, harassment, hate speech and the publication of information that discriminates unfairly.

Community courts
Community courts, such as the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the community and business. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

Traditional courts
There are traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) established at traditional community areas in rural villages.

Sexual offences courts
The courts feature specially trained officials, procedures and equipment to reduce the chance of secondary trauma for victims. .

National Register for Sex Offenders (NRSO)
The NRSO is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and

mentally disabled people.

The register gives employers in the public or private sectors such as schools, crèches and hospitals the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people.

National Child Protection Register

In terms of Section 126 of the Children's Act of 2005, employers offering services which allow for access to children must, before employing a person, establish from the Registrar of the National Child Protection Register whether or not the potential employee's name is on Part B of the National Child Protection Register. If the potential employee's name appears on the register, he or she will not be allowed to work in an environment which allows for access to children, since persons whose names appear on the register have been found unsuitable to work with children by the court.

Maintenance

Maintenance is the obligation to provide another person, for example a minor, with housing, food, clothing, education and medical care, or with the means that are necessary for providing the person with these essentials.

As part of further improving the maintenance system, the Maintenance Amendment Act of 2015 was enacted to ensure that every child receives the appropriate parental care, basic nutrition, shelter, basic heathcare services, education and other related support. The amendment also ensures the blacklisting of defaulters.

Domestic violence

Domestic violence means any physical abuse, sexual abuse, emotional, verbal and psychological abuse, economic abuse, intimidation, harassment, stalking, damage to property, trespassing where the parties do not share the same residence or any other controlling or abusive behaviour towards a complainant, where such conduct harms or may cause imminent harm to the safety, health or wellbeing of the complainant.

To curb gender-based violence (GBV), government has adopted a zero-tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, trans-gender and intersex people, and other forms of violence towards women and children.

Human trafficking

Human trafficking has become a focus of attention in the country following the introduction of the new visa requirements for children travelling through South Africa's ports of entry. Legislation aimed at preventing trafficking defines trafficking to include the recruitment, transportation, sale or harbour of people by means of force, deceit, the abuse of vulnerability and the abuse of power for exploitation.

Drug abuse

To curb the growing abuse of drugs, the DoJ&CD has amended Schedules 1 and 2 of the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act of 1992 to make the use and possession of drugs such as *nyaope* (also known as *woonga* or *wunga*) a criminal offence.

The use, possession and sale of dependence-producing drugs is strictly prohibited and punishable in South Africa. If convicted, a fine and/or imprisonment period of up to 15 years can be imposed. Selling or dealing in *nyaope* is punishable with a fine and/or imprisonment for a period of up to 25 years.

Role players

Legal Aid South Africa (Legal Aid SA)

Legal Aid SA provides legal aid or makes legal aid available to indigent persons within the budget allocated to it by the State.

Legal Aid SA has introduced a "Please Call Me" service through which members of the public send a "Please Call Me" text message and a legal advisor returns the call at no cost to the sender. The institution has also established a social media presence on Facebook, Twitter and Instagram.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU works closely with the NPA to ensure that prosecutions take place as soon as possible. It also works with the AFU in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

National Prosecuting Authority

The NPA structure includes the National Prosecutions Service (NPS), the Witness-Protection Programme, the AFU and units such as the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit, the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) and the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought from the proceeds of crime, or property that was used to commit a crime.

The family advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

The SOCA acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. One of the unit's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and GBV is the establishment of Thuthuzela Care Centres (TCCs).

The improved conviction rate in sexual offences of 72,7% in 2017/18 was an all-time high, reflecting a firm commitment to deliver justice for the most vulnerable members of society – the victims of sexual offences and GBV.

The TCC concept is recognised by the UN General Assembly as a "world best-practice model" in the field of gender-violence management and response. The TCCs are one-stop facilities located in public hospitals that aim to provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical-care counselling to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly manner.

The Thuthuzela Project is supported by the roll-out of victim support rooms in an effort to show empathy to victims of violent crime, especially in cases of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence.

Family violence, child protection and sexual offences units (FCS)

The FCS units operate in all South African Police Service clusters across the country. To give further impetus to the investigation of crimes of this nature, forensic social workers were appointed to assist in cases of child sexual abuse by conducting forensic assessments, compiling court reports and providing expert evidence in court.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU)

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security.
The PCLU was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director.

National Prosecutions Service

A significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by the Deputy Director of Public Prosecutions (DPPs). They head the respective regional jurisdictions, which are attached to the high courts of the country. All the public prosecutors and state advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the DPPs in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU's mandate is to effectively prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

Public Protector

The PP investigates complaints from the public or on own initiative against government at any level, its officials, persons performing public functions, corporations or companies where the State and statutory councils are involved. The PP's services are free and available to everyone.

Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible. The President appoints the PP on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The PP is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party. No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the PP. The PP has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the PP's recommendations are followed.

Department of Correctional Services

The DCS remains committed to placing humane and safe detention and rehabilitation at the centre of service delivery. In doing so, the department strives to promote corrections as a societal responsibility, contributing to enhanced public safety and reducing re-offending.

The DCS has various offender rehabilitation programmes which focus on restorative justice, skilling, training, reading and offender reintegration.

The strategic goals of the department are to ensure that:

- the efficiency of the justice system is improved through the effective management of remand processes
- society is protected through incarcerated offenders being secured and rehabilitated
- society is protected by offenders being reintegrated into the community as law-abiding citizens.

In this way, the department contributes to ensuring that all people in South Africa are and feel safe.

Other roleplayers

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act of 2011 provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

Correctional Supervision and Parole boards are responsible for dealing with parole matters and matters of correctional supervision. The Correctional Supervision and Parole boards have decision-making competency except:

- decisions regarding the granting of parole to people who are declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A of the CPA of 1998.
- the converting of sentences of imprisonment imposed in terms of Section 276 (A) (3) of the CPA of 1998 into correctional supervision
- decisions with regard to those sentenced to life imprisonment.

In such cases, recommendations are submitted to the courts that in turn will make a decision in respect of conditional placement.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Boards are chaired by community members who are regarded as suitable and capable of carrying out the responsibilities.

The DCS provides the members with intensive training in respect of the processes, legislative implications and relative policies.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Mineral Resources

The South African mining industry remains a significant contributor to the country's inclusive economic growth, transformation and skills development. It continues to offer unparalleled opportunities for both local and international investors, and has provided impetus for the development of infrastructure

The country is richly endowed with mineral resources and produces more than 30 metal and mineral products. It has huge potential with respect to mineral reserves, exploration and production. The country ranks first in the quantity of world reserves of chrome ore, fluorspar, manganese ore, platinum group metals (PGMs) and zirconium.

The Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) continues to focus, among other things, on ensuring the best utilisation of mineral resources, monitoring mining rights, and ensuring compliance with safety and environmental legislation, all of which in turn, contribute towards promoting investment in South Africa, as well as contributing more broadly to an equitable and inclusive economy.

Specific initiatives include promoting investment in the minerals and upstream petroleum sector include research on shale gas; assisting small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs); marketing and providing information, and licensing.

In the medium term, the department planned to focus on accelerating transformation and empowerment in the mining sector by: eradicating barriers to the socio-economic development of mining communities; providing technical support to beneficiation projects; increasing the participation of small-scale miners; and fostering greater value chain integration.

Further focus areas include ensuring the health and safety of miners and mining communities, protecting and rehabilitating the environment, ensuring the best use of mineral resources, and attracting investment in the minerals and upstream petroleum sectors.

The department aims to eradicate illegal mining or zama-zamas through stakeholder forums established in Mpumalanga, Free State, Gauteng, Northern Cape and Limpopo. The purpose of stakeholder forums (which include miners, the Chamber of Mines, workers and government representatives) is to implement a segmented approach to enforcement, and efforts to ensure compliance. These measures include:

- promoting legitimate mining activities; sealing off holes and old mining shafts; policing and law enforcement;
- conducting training workshops for all stakeholders; and rehabilitating illegal mining sites.

Entities

- **Mine Health and Safety Council:** Researches and advises the Minister in terms of mine health and safety, as well as promotes a culture of health and safety in the mining industry.
- **Council for Mineral Technology Research (Mintek):** Provides research, development and technology that fosters the development of business in themineral and mineral products industries.
- **Council for Geoscience (CGS):** Develops and publishes world-class geoscience knowledge products and provides geoscience-related services to the South African public and to industry.
- **South African State Diamond and Precious Minerals Regulator:** Regulates the diamond, platinum and gold sectors.
- **State Diamond Trader:** Promotes equitable access to and beneficiation of diamond resources, addresses distortions in the diamond industry and corrects historical market failures to develop and grow South Africa's diamond-cutting and polishing industry.

Mineral wealth

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following geological formations and settings:

Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)

The future of mining in the country depends largely on the successful implementation of skills development initiatives.

Particular focus is placed on artisan and artisan aid as well as other technical skills. Capacity building within the DMR and associated institutions has also been prioritised in respect of identified critical areas of skills shortage and necessary interventions have been introduced, which include learnership programmes and bursary schemes.

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority, and facilitates the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors.

Petroleum Agency South Africa (PASA)

The PASA regulates exploration and production activities, and is the custodian of the national petroleum exploration and production database. The agency funds its activities from the sale of data and reserves accumulated from its exploration work.

As the custodian of South Africa's petroleum data, the agency will conduct research, source data, and enhance and store such data on a world-class data management platform. The platform ensures that quality data is accessible for potential and existing operators. The agency will evaluate South African oil and gas reserves (including shale gas) to determine prospects, and attract oil and gas investment into South Africa.

Shale gas exploration

Through its state-owned agencies, CGS and PASA, the DMR has been conducting the Karoo Deep Drilling and Geo-Environmental Baseline programme. This programme is based in Beaufort West and seeks to better understand the potential impact of geo-resource exploration activities (minerals, gas, deep groundwater, and geothermal) on the Karoo geo-environment.

It is anticipated that the information and data gathered through this study will further inform the augmentation of regulatory instruments and the monitoring of shale gas operations.

Reserves

Gold

The large-scale gold mines operating in South Africa include the record setting TauTona Gold Mine, which extends 3,9 km underground. TauTona means "great lion" in Setswana. South Africa accounts for 10.5% of the world's gold reserves. The Witwatersrand Basin remains the world's largest gold resource.

Coal

Government has emphasised the importance of ensuring a sustainable local coal supply for the country's energy requirements. This commodity currently plays a vital role in meeting South Africa's primary energy needs, as well as in the economy in general. It is recognised that coal contributes to the economy, not only to supply energy, but through the generation of export revenue, contributing to GDP and employment.

Platinum group metals

Platinum, palladium, rhodium, osmium, ruthenium and iridium occur together in nature alongside nickel and copper. Platinum, palladium and rhodium, the most economically significant of the PGMs, are found in the largest quantities.

The remaining PGMs are produced as co-products. South Africa is the world's leading platinum and rhodium producer, and the second-largest palladium producer after Russia. South Africa's production is sourced entirely from the Bushveld Complex, the largest known PGM-resource in the world.

Platinum

South Africa accounts for 96% of known global reserves of the PGMs. The Merensky Reef, stretching from southern Zimbabwe through to the Rustenburg and Pretoria regions, is the centre of platinum mining in South Africa, playing host to companies such as Rustenburg Platinum Mines and Bafokeng Rasimone Platinum Mines.

Palladium

South Africa is the world's second-largest palladium producer. All of South Africa's production is sourced from the Bushveld Igneous Complex, which hosts the world's largest resource of PGMs.

Palladium, together with platinum, is more abundant than any of the other PGMs. It has the lowest melting point (1 554°C) of all the PGMs. Its most remarkable property is its ability to absorb enormous amounts of hydrogen at room temperature.

Ferrous minerals

It is the largest new investment in the manganese industry in the country and supports government's drive to increase the beneficiation in South Africa.

The furnace is designed to produce 120 000 kt of High Carbon Ferro Manganese a year, and includes improvements to ensure increased reliability, availability and also improved pollution control during the production process.

Copper

Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company in Limpopo is South Africa's only producer of refined copper.

Producing about 80 000 t per year, it supplies most of South Africa's copper needs and exports the balance.

Useful byproduct metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite and nickel sulphate as well as small quantities of gold, silver and platinum.

Manganese

South Africa has significant proven manganese reserves, but exploitation of the mineral has not reflected its development potential.

Diamonds

South Africa plans to process a greater proportion of its gems locally to keep more profit in the country. Government wants to cut and refine 70% of the diamonds mined in South Africa by 2023.

Industrial minerals

Of the hundreds producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector.

There are producers of clays (brickmakiåg), limestone and dolomite, dimension stone, 28 salt and silica in South Africa.

Bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 billion years.

The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved.

Housing and Living Conditions Standards

By mid-2018, the DMR was in the process of reviewing the Housing and Living Conditions Standards, which were developed in terms of Section 100 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002.

The review seeks to address the historic and systematic policies of discrimination and marginalisation of mineworkers in terms of their working, housing and living conditions, and to provide for the progressive realisation and protection of their basic constitutional right to human dignity through provision of adequate access to housing, better living conditions and related amenities.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Police and Defence

Law-enforcement services in South Africa fall under the Department of Police, which is responsible for policy determination, direction and overall execution of the department's mandate in relation to relevant legislation.

The National Police Commissioner answers directly to the Minister of Police. Entities reporting to the Minister of Police are the:
- Civilian Secretariat for Police
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
- South African Police Service (SAPS)
- Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority.

South African Police Service

The SAPS derives its powers and functions from Section 205 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and from the SAPS Act of 1995. This legislation regulates the police service in terms of its core function, which is to prevent, investigate and combat crime.

The National Commissioner heads the SAPS. Deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and provincial commissioners (under whom the police stations fall) report to the National Commissioner.

The SAPS's policing objectives, in accordance with the provisions of Section 205 of the Constitution, are to:
- prevent, combat and investigate crime
- maintain public order
- protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property
- uphold and enforce the law.

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa.

The mission of the SAPS is to:
- prevent and combat anything that may threaten the safety and security of any community
- investigate any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community
- ensure offenders are brought to justice
- participate in efforts to address the root causes of crime.

The National Development Plan (NDP) complements the Constitution by emphasising the form of policing that is required in a democratic South Africa.

The NDP denotes "Building Safer Communities" as a key objective and establishes the following as the vision for the country by 2030: "In 2030, people living in South Africa feel safe at home, at school and at work, and they enjoy a community life free of fear. Women walk freely in the streets and children play safely outside. The police service is well-resourced and professional, staffed by highly skilled officers who value their work, serve the community, safeguard lives and property without discrimination, protect the peaceful against violence, and respect the rights to equality and justice."

The NDP sets five priorities for the achievement of the above vision:
- Strengthen the criminal justice system
- Make the police service professional
- Demilitarise the police
- Build safety using an integrated approach
- Build community participation in safety.

Chapter 12 of the NDP details the need to build safer communities in South Africa through a holistic view of safety and security. Outcome 3 (all people in South Africa are and feel safe) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework gives expression to this and is aligned with the crime prevention and investigation operations of the Department of Police.

In this regard, the department's focus over the medium term will continue to be on: strengthening the implementation of recovery plans for visible policing, detective services and service terminations; enhancing operational capacity for public order policing; and combatting gender-based violence (GBV), serial murder and serial rape through implementing the minister's six point plan on GBV and implementing the new standardised policy on the investigation and management of serial murder and serial rape.

Addressing these priorities lays the groundwork for a police service that is responsive to the safety and security needs of society, and upholds a high standard of conduct and professionalism.

Resources

At the end of March 2018, the establishment of the SAPS was 193 297, including 150 791 SAPS Act members and 42 506 Pubic Service Act members, compared to 194 605 personnel, at the end of March 2017.

The police/population ratio at the end of March 2018, was 1:375. During 2017/18, the average employee turnover rate was 2,7%. This represents a marginal increase of 2,4%, compared to 2016/17.

Resignations contributed the most towards the number of exits recorded, in the 2017/18 financial year, followed by retirements. Resignations increased from 1 889, recorded, in 2016/17 to 2 039, in 2017/18.

The most prominent reasons for employees resigning from the service, is due to more lucrative work prospects, including better compensation opportunities. Retirements increased from 1 331, in 2016/17 to 1 412, in 2017/18.

By the end of 2016/17, the SAPS had 52 385 transport assets, which consists of 48 337 vehicles, 1 040 motorcycles, 49 aircrafts, 136 boats, 142 pieces of machinery (e.g. forklifts) and 2 681 trailers. There were 1 146 police stations countrywide.

Enhancing operational capacity for public order policing

In response to the recommendations of the Marikana Commission of Inquiry, in April 2016, the Department of Police appointed an independent panel of experts to review and amend all prescripts relevant to public order policing to adopt international best practice.

Among the preliminary findings from the review was that the use of police force in public order policing needs to be reviewed, and that the department needs to invest in people and not focus only on technological advancements.

Accordingly, over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period, the department planned to implement the findings of the panel of experts to strengthen its capacity for public order policing.

Key priority areas included training 6 770 officials in public order policing in 2017/18, and procuring specialised equipment such as aircraft cameras, video and recording equipment, water cannons, and armoured vehicles.

Combating GBV, serial murder and serial rape

Building on the Back to Basics approach to policing, which focuses on improving police performance and conduct, the Minister of Police introduced a Six-Point Plan in August 2017 that outlines the code of conduct and procedure to be followed by police officials when dealing with cases relating to violence against women and children.

The plan is being used as a concise guide for police officials and communities across the country to create awareness.

Forensic Science Services and Criminal Record Centre

The function of the Criminal Record Centre is to identify and confirm any previous convictions of suspects in crimes being investigated by the SAPS.

The Criminal Record and Crime Scene Management arm expanded its frontline service delivery capacity to make it more accessible to local investigating officers and to improve response times in attending to crime scenes.

The forensic science laboratory renders a support service to investigating officers by analysing physical evidence collected from various crime scenes.

Crime situation

Serious crime comprises contact crime, contact-related crime, property-related crime and other serious crime. To ensure that all people are and feel safe in South Africa, enhanced police visibility and targeted crime-prevention operations are intended to deter and detect prevailing threats.

Serious crime reduced by 4,3% from 1 745 385 reported serious crimes, in 2016/17 to 1 670 574, in 2017/18. Crimes against women indicated an increase of 2,7% from 172 961 in 2016/17 to 177 620 by the end of March 2018.

A decrease of 0,7% for crimes against children was recorded from 43 842 reported crimes, in 2016/17 to 43 540 reported crimes, in 2017/18. Reported crime for unlawful possession and dealing in drugs, increased by 10,5% from 292 689, in 2016/17 to 323 547, in 2017/18.

Drug-related crime are usually not reported to the police, but is largely dependent on the deployment of law enforcement personnel and the employment of intelligence for detection.

Drug eradication

Increased illicit drug use and alcohol consumption, are some of the main contributors to the perpetration of violent crime.

The SAPS continued representation on the Central Drug Authority and oversees the implementation of the Departmental Drug Master Plan, which includes activities dealing with both national and transnational aspects of drug trafficking, law enforcement and the combating of substance abuse.

Numerous and significant illicit drug seizures, by authorities at international airports and at ports of entry, points to South Africa being considered a lucrative market for international drug syndicates. The successes achieved with the dismantling of clandestine drug laboratories locally, also indicate that the drug market in South Africa is not solely supplied by international sources.

The South African Narcotics Enforcement Bureau (SANEB) dismantled a total of 53 clandestine laboratories, during 2017/18 compared to 45 in 2016/17. Furthermore, the SANEB has succeeded in drug seizures valued at R238.6 million, ranging from cannabis, cocaine, methamphetamine, methaqualone, methacathinone, heroine, nyoape and ecstasy.

In 2017/18, the SAPS sized 216 654,278 kg cannabis, 864 451 Mandrax tablets, 392 945 kg crystal meth (Tik-Tik), 77 444 kg cocaine and 546 500 kg heroine. More than 20 000 kg of cannabis were confiscated in each of the Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Western Cape and Northern Cape.

The majority of Mandrax tablets, 60,94% were confiscated in the Western Cape (526 798 tablets), followed by the Eastern Cape (95 699 tablets or 11,07%), the Northern Cape (67 245 or 7,78%) and the North West (61 049 or 7,06%) and 85,39% or 466 680 kg of the heroine were seized in KwaZulu-Natal.

The Western Cape recorded 292 364 kg (74,40%) or of crystal meth (Tik-Tik) seized. During this period, the majority of drugs were confiscated in small quantities from users and sellers, whilst major drug busts were recorded in 2016/17.

Although drug seizures indicate a decrease, more drugs (cocaine, crystal meth (Tik-Tik), dry cannabis and ecstasy) were seized at South African borders in 2017/18 compared to 2016/17.

Vehicle crime

From 1 April 2017 to 31 March 2018, a total of 63 839 vehicles were reported stolen or robbed. From this figure, a total of 45 136 (70,70%) were reported stolen and 18 703 (29,30%) were reported robbed.

In 2016/17, a total of 47 768 (70,91%) vehicles were reported as stolen and 19 597 (29,09%) were reported as robbed. There was an overall decrease of 3 526 (5,23%) reported cases compared to 2016/17. A total of 27 747 stolen and robbed vehicles were recovered.

This figure includes 22 093 identified vehicles, 5 499 unidentified vehicles and 155 vehicles recovered during cross-border operations.

Visible policing

The Visible Policing Programme comprises of the Crime Prevention, Border Security and Specialised Interventions Subprogrammes, which are managed by the Visible Policing and the Operational Response Services divisions.

The Visible Policing Division provides direction on the effective combating of crime, through the provisioning of a visible policing service. The purpose of the Division is to discourage all crime, by providing a proactive and responsive policing service, striving towards the reduction of crime levels and to instil community confidence in the SAPS.

The division renders its services by developing, implementing, monitoring and executing regulations, policies and acts. The four components of the Division are Proactive Policing Services, Firearms, Liquor and Second-Hand Goods (FLASH) Services; Rapid Rail and Police Emergency Services and Social Crime Prevention.

Crime intelligence

The Crime Intelligence Division within the SAPS is responsible for the gathering, centralisation, integration, management and coordination of intelligence.

Legislative prescriptions require the division to confine all its intelligence activities, which are related to crime and/or criminal activities.

The division offers essential support to all operational divisions within the SAPS, to address crime, stability and related activities, with the ultimate purpose of neutralising threats to public safety.

Crime Intelligence conducts its intelligence gathering, intelligence analysis and supplementary activities within strict legal and regulatory parameters, with due regard to the constitutionally protected rights of individuals.

Victims, women and children

The main responsibility of the SAPS towards empowering victims is to render a victim-friendly service to all victims of crime. It includes:

- developing, monitoring and implementing policies, directives and instructions aimed at improving services to victims of crime
- sensitising and training SAPS members to render a professional, victim-friendly service
- ensuring that SAPS facilities are victim-friendly.

Community partnership programmes

Community policing forums at police stations serve as the instrument for ensuring that the SAPS engages and cooperates with communities.

Independent Police Investigative Directorate

The function of IPID is to ensure independent oversight of the SAPS and the municipal police services (MPS), conduct independent and impartial investigations of identified criminal offences allegedly committed by members of the SAPS and MPS, and make appropriate recommendations.

The IPID Act of 2011 grants the IPID an extended mandate and changes the focus of the its work from a complaints-driven organisation to one that prioritises the investigative function.

The Act further places stringent obligations on the SAPS and MPS to report matters that must be investigated by the directorate and ensure the implementation of the disciplinary recommendations of the directorate.

High-impact cases include, but are not limited to, corruption, systemic corruption, death while in police custody, death as a result of police action, rape by a police officer whether on or off duty, and rape while in police custody.

The directorate's focus on high-impact cases over the medium term will ensure that it is able to deal effectively with cases that are generally more complex to investigate. This is also expected to decrease the likelihood of the occurrence of other criminal offences by the police, such as assault, torture and discharge of an official firearm, which the directorate has a legislative obligation to investigate.

Defence

The Department of Defence (DoD) derives its mandate from Section 200 of the Constitution, the Defence Act of 2002, as amended by the Defence Amendment Act of 2010, the *1996 White Paper on Defence* and the 2015 South African Defence Review.

The department is required to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities that are commensurate with the needs of South Africa.

Over the medium term, the department intended to focus on sustaining South Africa's defence capabilities, safeguarding South Africa's borders and territorial integrity, and implementing the maritime security strategy. The department also planned to participate in peace support operations, internal operations, and expanding and maintaining infrastructure.

The primary role of the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is to defend South Africa against external military aggression. In this regard deployment in an internal policing capacity is limited to exceptional circumstances and subject to parliamentary approval.

The SANDF's core mandate is the protection of the country, its territorial integrity and its people.

The 2015 South African Defence Review provides a policy for South Africa's defence trajectory over the next 20 to 30 years. The review proposes a number of milestones, the first of which is aimed towards arresting the decline in critical defence capabilities.

This is expected to be achieved by focusing on a number of core measures and deliverables, such as conducting priority defence missions; and setting up measures to improve efficiency, sustainability and capability.

As a sovereign state, South Africa has a duty to safeguard its borders against the possibility of transnational crime, international crime syndicates and cartels, the illegal flow of undocumented migrants, and illicit economic activities. Over the medium term, the department planned to deploy 15 landward sub-units along South Africa's borders with Zimbabwe, Swaziland, Mozambique, Lesotho, Botswana and Namibia.

Peace support

Peacekeeping missions are a critical element to respond to conflict, prevent conflict and deter potential aggressors. The department also contributes to domestic safety and security by conducting internal operations such as border safeguarding and operations in support of other government departments. The department also plans to focus on preparing and deploying the SANDF for the 2019 national elections.

Maritime safety and security

Over the next three years, the South African Navy plans to conduct maritime border patrols and combat piracy in the Mozambique Channel.

A suite of surface (frigates), sub-surface (submarines) and offshore patrol vessels will be deployed to keep South Africa's maritime space safe and support the execution of the SADC's maritime security strategy.

The department aims to maintain the number of hours at sea per year at 12 000 until 2018/19, after which they are expected to decrease to 10 000 to align performance with the reduced budget.

Department of Military Veterans (DMV)

The DMV derives its mandate from the Military Veterans Act of 2011, which requires the department to provide national policy and standards on socio-economic support to military veterans and to their dependants, including benefits and entitlement to help realise a dignified, unified, empowered and self-sufficient community of military veterans.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue delivering key benefits such as housing, education, training and skills development, and access to healthcare to military veterans and their dependants.

The department also planned to amend legislation and develop policies to improve the services it provides to military veterans and their dependants.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor)

The mission of Armscor is to meet the acquisition, maintenance and disposal needs of the DoD and other clients in terms of defence matériel, and related products and services.

The corporation maintains strategic capabilities and technologies, and promotes the local defence related industry, ensuring that the SANDF receives quality equipment to carry out its mandate.

To maintain competitiveness, the corporation aims to acquire capital assets such as armoured vehicles and helicopters in an economically viable manner.

Denel

Denel is a state-owned commercially driven company and strategic partner for innovative defence, security and related technology solutions. It groups together several defence and aerospace divisions and associated companies.

Denel provides turn-key solutions of defence equipment to its clients by designing, developing, integrating and supporting artillery, munitions, missiles, aerostructures, aircraft maintenance, unmanned aerial vehicle systems and optical payloads based on high-end technology.

Intelligence services

The State Security Agency's (SSA) mandate is to provide government with intelligence on domestic, foreign or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of its people. This enables government to implement and improve policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats.

The SSA comprises:

- the Domestic Branch (formerly the National Intelligence Agency)
- the Foreign Branch (formerly the South African Secret Service)
- the Intelligence Academy (formerly the South African National Academy of Intelligence)
- National Communications, which includes the former National Communications Centre, Office for Interception Centres and Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd.

The SSA focuses on matters of national interest, including terrorism, sabotage, subversion, espionage and organised crime.

Vetting

Part of the SSA's objective is to be able to conduct vetting for all government departments in a user-friendly and speedy manner, in line with its counter-intelligence mandate that ensures that the department creates conditions of security, which enable government and key state entities to do their work.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Provinces

South Africa has been aptly described as a microcosm of the world, a place where civilisations meet. With its spectacular views, stunning wildlife and unbeatable biodiversity in contrast with its bustling modern cities, and vibrant economy, South Africa is often described as “A world in one country.”

The country has more than 290 conservation parks. It is home to almost 300 mammal species, and about 860 bird species, and 8 000 plant species. The annual sardine run is the biggest migration on the planet.

There are 10 World Heritage sites and seven different biomes. It is considered the Cradle of Humankind and boasts 40% of all hominid finds on Earth. The country has a lot to offer in the form of places of interest and varying forms of amusement.

South Africa has nine provinces, which vary considerably in size. The smallest is tiny and crowded Gauteng, a highly urbanised region, and the largest the vast, arid and empty Northern Cape, which takes up almost a third of South Africa’s total land area.

Each province has its own Legislature, Premier and Executive Council. The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Swaziland lie to the north-east. Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho

South Africa has three capitals:

- **Cape Town**, in the City of Cape Town metropolitan municipality, Western Cape, is the legislative capital and is where the country’s Parliament is found.
- **Bloemfontein**, in Mangaung metropolitan municipality, Free State, is the judicial capital and home to the Supreme Court of Appeal.
- **Pretoria**, in the City of Tshwane metropolitan municipality, Gauteng, is the administrative capital, and the ultimate capital of the country. It is home to the Union Buildings and a large proportion of the Public Service.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, lying on the south-eastern South African coast, is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the stretch known as the Wild Coast. In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south.

The province is serviced by airports situated in Port Elizabeth, East London, Mthatha and Bhisho.

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho

Principal languages:

isiXhosa	82,7%
Afrikaans	10,3%
English	3,9%

Population: 6 522 700
Percentage share of the total population: 11,3%
Area: 168 966 km^2

Source: Stats SA’s *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016*

Free State

The Free State, a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns, lies in the heart of South Africa.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:

Sesotho	71,9%
Afrikaans	10,9%
isiXhosa	5,7%

Population: 2 954 300
Percentage share of the total population: 5,1%
Area: 129 825 km^2

Source: Stats SA’s *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016* eye can see. Mining, particularly gold, is the biggest employer, followed by manufacturing.

The Free State also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone.

The capital, Bloemfontein, houses the Supreme Court of Appeal, a leading university and some top schools. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem.

The charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains. Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State.

Other key tourist attractions in the province include the majestic Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg, and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is on the United Nations' (UN) World Heritage Site List.

Gauteng

Gauteng is the economic centre of South Africa and the continent, responsible for over 34,8% of the country's total gross domestic product. Although it is the smallest of South Africa's nine provinces, Gauteng comprises the largest share of the South African population.

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg
Principal languages:

IsiZulu	23,0%
Afrikaans	10,1%
Sesotho	12,7%
English	11,3%

Population: 14 717 000
Percentage share of the total population: 25,5%
Area: 18 178 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016*

Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the most important economic sectors.

The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand, and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport. Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal, one of the country's most popular holiday destinations, is the province with the second largest population. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg
Principal languages:

isiZulu	82,5%
English	12,5%
Afrikaans	1,0%

Population: 11 384 700
Percentage share of the total population: 19,7%
Area: 94 361 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016* stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary.

In addition to the magnificent coastline, there is the sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west that offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes.

Within the area is a vast 243 000-hectare sweep of basalt summits and buttresses. This section was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000, and was renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several tertiary institutions of learning, such as the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, borders onto Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal entrance to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, spectacular scenery and a wealth of historical and cultural treasures.

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane

Principal languages:

Sepedi	56,0%
Tshivenda	17,1%
Xitsonga	16,6%

Population: 5 797 300

Percentage share of the total population: 10,0%

Area: 125 755 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016*

This province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as bushveld. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial reserves, as well as several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means Place where the sun rises. Owing to its spectacular scenic beauty and abundance of wildlife, the province is one of South Africa's major tourist destinations. Mpumalanga falls mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit

Principal languages:

Siswati	29,1%
isiZulu	28,8%
Xitsonga	9,6%
isiNdebele	10,1%

Population: 4 523 900

Percentage share of the total population: 7,8%

Area: 76 495 km²

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016*

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the

Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains were added to the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization's prestigious World Heritage List in July 2018, becoming the 10th World Heritage Site for South Africa.

The site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3,25 to 3,6 billion years.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is the largest province in South Africa, covering 31% of the country's surface area (slightly bigger than Germany). However, the Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

The province is noted for its San rock art, diamond diggings, 4X4 safaris and the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park. It is a vast stretch of semi-desert land. The province is renowned for its spectacular display of spring flowers, which, for a short period every year, attracts thousands of tourists.

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages:

Afrikaans	56,8%
Setswana	33,4%

Population: 1 225 600

Percentage share of the total population: 2,1%

Area: 372 889 km^2

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016*

Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope. The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array radio-telescope (better known as the SKA Project), the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon. Electrical power generation presents an opportunity for greater economic diversification and growth in the province.

North West

North West lies in the north of South Africa, on the Botswana border, fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve, the Cradle of Humankind Site, the Taung Heritage Site, the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust and the Lesedi Cultural Village are some of the tourist attractions.

North West

Capital: Mahikeng

Principal languages:

Setswana	71,5%
Afrikaans	8,96%
isiXhosa	5,51%

Population: 3 979 000

Percentage share of the total population: 6,9%

Area: 104 882 km^2

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016*

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country. North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize.

Mining contributes 23,3% to North West's economy, and makes up 22,5% of the South

African mining industry. It is known as the Platinum Province due to its abundant mineral riches of platinum, chrome and the platinum group metals. It is also home to a strong dimension stone sector, due to the riches of its slate, marble and granite deposits.

The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of Africa, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:

Afrikaans	46,6%
isiXhosa	31,1%
English	19,6%

Population: 6 621 100

Percentage share of the total population: 11,5%

Area: 129 462 km^2

Source: Stats SA's *Mid-year population estimates 2018* and *Community Survey 2016*

Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbsch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than 553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape. The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests.

Cape Town has proved again that it is a film-friendly destination and it is reaping the benefits. The Department of Trade and Industry's rebate to international productions is also a big incentive for foreign film-makers.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Rural Development

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) has an ongoing commitment to build sustainable rural livelihoods.

The department is also mandated to initiate, facilitate, coordinate, catalyse and implement an integrated rural development programme in line with Chapter 6 of the National Development Plan (NDP), which details a vision for building an inclusive rural economy; and Outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Over the medium period, the department intends focusing on land restitution; agrarian and land tenure transformation; productive use of redistributed land; and the creation of increased opportunities through the National Rural Youth Service Corps (NARYSEC) initiative. NARYSEC is a skills development initiative which forms part of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme's (CRDP) job-creation model.

The initiative recruits unemployed youth from rural areas between the ages of 18 and 25 who have passed Grade 12 or have higher qualifications, and equips them with business and entrepreneurial skills.

Entities

- **Agricultural Land Holding Account (ALHA):** The ALHA was established in terms of the Provision of Land and Assistance Act of 1993, which gives legal effect to the proactive acquisition of land, where the Minister may, from money appropriated by Parliament for this purpose, acquire land for the purposes of this Act. Therefore the State will proactively target land and merge this with the demand or need for land.
- **KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board (ITB):** The ITB was established in terms of the provisions of the KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Act of 1994. Its core business is to manage land for the material benefit and social well-being of the individual members of the tribes.
- **Registration of Deeds Trading Account:** The Registration of Deeds Trading Account is a trading entity established in terms of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999. It generates revenue by selling information and levying fees in accordance with the schedule of fees prescribed by regulation 84 of the Act; registers rights in land and thus provides security of title. It also maintains public registers of land.
- **Office of the Valuer General:** Supports land reform by providing impartial, efficient, just and equitable valuation services for all-land reform related matters in the country.

Agrarian and land tenure transformation

The One Household One Hectare initiative is the key mechanism used to promote agrarian transformation and provide landless people with access to land. As part of this initiative, the agri-parks programme aims to create smallholder producers in 44 of the country's poorest districts and other sites in densely populated areas.

Each Agri-park supports smallholder farmers by providing capacity, mentorship, farm infrastructure, extension services, and production and mechanisation inputs. These farmers own 70 per cent of agri-parks, while the remaining 30 per cent is owned by government and commercial farmers.

Agri-parks are expected to contribute to government's targets of creating one million new jobs in rural economies by 2030, and developing 300 000 new small-scale farmers and creating 145 000 agro-processing jobs by 2020.

Land restitution

Land restitution remains a key government priority and the DRDLR intends to intensify its efforts in this regard. Following a Constitutional Court judgment in 2016 that ruled the Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act of 2014 as invalid and contrary to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Bill was resubmitted to Parliament as a private members Bill in 2017. Once passed, the Act will make provision for the effective and constitutional redistribution of land.

In terms of the judgment, should all claims emanating from original lodgement be processed before the two-year period lapses, the commission may approach the Constitutional Court for a review of the judgment.

The Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act of 2014 extends the deadline for land claims to June 2019. The amendment also criminalises false and fraudulent claims made by illegible people, which wastes taxpayers' money.

The Act also simplifies the procedure for the appointment of judges to the Land Claims Court, and the amendment of certain provisions aimed at promoting the effective implementation of the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994.

Extending the deadline for the lodging of claims was in line with the proposals of the NDP, the CRDP and other growth strategies intended to promote national reconciliation and social cohesion.

The Act seeks to reopen the window for persons or communities dispossessed of their land due to past discriminatory laws and policies to lodge claims for their properties.

The CRLR is responsible for investigating and processing restitution claims. The CRLR also develops and coordinates restitution policies and oversees restitution court cases. The restitution programme is aimed at removing the settlement of land restitution claims under the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994.

The strategic objective of the CRLR is the restitution of rights in land or awards of alternative forms of equitable redress to claimants, within Medium Term Expenditure Framework budgetary allocation.

The CRLR seeks to provide equitable redress to victims of racially motivated land dispossession, in line with the provisions of the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994. It plans to increase the number of lodgement sites to 52 by 2019.

In the 2017/18 financial year, the department achieved 850 of 1 001 planned land claims to be settled. The challenge has been the non-acceptance of offers to land owners/sellers.

Expropriation of land without compensation

The DRDLR is constitutionally empowered to change the skewed land-ownership patterns while maintaining economic growth, food security and increased agricultural productions.

The Land Audit report on private land ownership by race, gender and nationality, released by the department in 2018, revealed that black South Africans own only 4% of the land in this country. This is a direct result of the historical injustices that resulted in skewed land ownership patterns along racial lines.

On 19 June 1913 thousands of black families were forcibly removed from their land following the promulgation of the 1913 Natives Land Act. Stripped of their land, homes, livelihoods and their dignity they were forced into homelands or relocated to poorly planned and serviced townships. Prior to this black people were also forcibly removed from their land by various discriminatory laws, policies and practices enacted by colonialist and imperialist governments.

In 1994 the democratic government identified the need for land and agrarian reform as part of national reconciliation. Land restitution as one of the three elements of land reform was aimed at providing redress to persons and communities dispossessed of their property rights by previous governments.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 allows for restitution to any person or community dispossessed of land rights before 27 April 1994. The Constitution also guarantees the right to property, albeit with the power of expropriation, subject to compensation that is just and equitable.

On 27 February 2018, the National Assembly adopted a motion to amend the Constitution so as to allow for the expropriation of land without compensation. The matter was referred to the Joint Constitutional Review Committee (JCRC), which was expected to report back to Parliament by 30 August 2018.

A series of public hearings were held in all provinces, followed by committee meetings to agree on a recommendation to the National Assembly.

The National Council of Provinces followed the National Assembly in agreeing that Section 25 of the Constitution should be amended to make the expropriation of land without compensation more explicit. The JCRC, which is a joint committee of both Houses of Parliament, was mandated by the resolutions of both Houses to investigate the possible review of Section 25 of the Constitution and other clauses, where necessary, to make it possible for the State to expropriate land in the public interest without compensation.

Government appointed an Inter-Ministerial Committee on Land Reform, led by Deputy President David Mabuza, to coordinate and implement measures to accelerate the redistribution of land, extension of security of tenure, provision of agricultural support and redress of spatial inequality within a broad and comprehensive land redistribution and agricultural development programme.

Deeds registration

The 10 deeds registries are located in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, King William's Town, Vryburg, Mthatha and Nelspruit. These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act of 1937 and the Sectional Titles Act of 1986.

In the 2017/18 financial year, the DRDLR was expected to initiate and implement e-lodgement as the first phase of the Electronic Deeds.

Animal and Veld Management Programme (AVMP)

The AVMP aims to address the unsustainable land use management practices in rural areas that have generally led to poor management of the veld and overstocking, causing low livestock production and deterioration of the natural resources (grazing, water, soil) and resulting in land degradation and deforestation.

In addressing these problems, the AVMP has three projects: Soil rehabilitation; Re-greening the environment and Decongesting the space.

The intended outcomes of the AVMP are food security; improved rural livelihoods; improved livestock and veld management; increased production, improved environmental management, and enabling rural communities to use land more sustainably.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme

The DRDLR, in line with the NDP, adopted the CRDP and the Agrarian Transformation Strategy to address the challenges facing people living in the rural areas. In the 2017/18 financial year, the department facilitated the formulation of Rural Development Plans (RDPs) in each district.

These are vital instruments for integrated spatial planning. The RDPs are aimed at ensuring integration of rural development and land reform interventions within the wider CRDP. The CRDP was developed to tackle issues such as underdevelopment, hunger, poverty, joblessness, lack of basic services and other social ills which have become synonymous with rural areas and redistributing 30% of the country's agricultural land.

The CRDP addresses specific needs of the communities in rural areas such as running water, sanitation, housing and development support.

Rural Enterprise Industrial Development (REID)

REID aims to create an enabling institutional environment for vibrant and sustainable rural communities. The approach is based on social mobilisation of rural communities so that there can be ownership of rural development projects and programmes.

National Rural Youth Service Corps

The NARYSEC is a skills development initiative, which forms part of the CRDP's job-creation model.

The initiative recruits unemployed youth from rural areas between the ages of 18 and 25, who have passed Grade 12 or have higher qualifications, and equips them with business and entrepreneurial skills. The NARYSEC College in Thaba 'Nchu in the Free State is being used to provide skills training.

Job opportunities provided through the initiative include areas such as administration, agriculture, construction, education, engineering, health and safety, hospitality, renewable energy and transport.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Science and Technology

The Department of Science and Technology (DST) seeks to boost socio-economic development in South Africa through research and innovation. To achieve its goals, the department provides leadership, an enabling environment and resources for science, technology and innovation.

Through its programmes and several entities, the DST is accomplishing groundbreaking science and enhancing the well-being of all South Africans.

The department has made meaningful progress since the introduction of the *White Paper on Science and Technology* in 1996, and related policy documents like the National Research and Development Strategy and Ten-Year Innovation Plan, aimed at transforming the science, technology and innovation system to serve all South Africans, expanding and transforming human resources, increasing financial resources and promoting innovation to support socio-economic development.

Tshwane Khulelwe project

During 2017/18, the Department supported the Tshwane Khulelwe project, an initiative that aims to curb maternal mortality. The primary objective of the project was to evaluate the clinical significance and benefit of routine screening with Umbiflow, a portable umbilical artery Doppler device developed by the South African Medical Research Council (SAMRC) and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), of an unselected population in a low-resource primary health care setting.

The device is meant to assist in detecting foetuses at risk of stillbirth, and is cost-effective compared to other such devices. Funding has been secured from the World Health Organisation to expand the project into other African countries.

Improved access to sanitation

Water supply and sanitation in South Africa remains a challenge, particularly in rural areas faced with growing service delivery backlogs. To contribute towards addressing these challenges, the DST in collaboration with the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation invested in a programme aimed at piloting innovative sanitation technologies.

This programme has provided access to decent and appropriate sanitation services to previously underserved rural communities.

It is also contributing to technology localisation and unlocking industrialisation opportunities for South Africa. An innovative, water-efficient sanitation technology solution from Loughborough University in the UK is also being localised in the country.

The South African team, spearheaded by the DST, had developed and constructed a local prototype. During 2017/18, the product entered the testing phase. Once it has been tested and optimised, the model for mass production will be developed.

Renewable Energy Hub and Spoke Programme

During 2017/18, SolarTurtle, a spin-off company of the Renewable Energy Hub and Spoke Programme at Stellenbosch University, built on the success of the Technology for Rural Education and Development programme in Cofimvaba, in the Eastern Cape, by expanding its footprint to other rural areas in South Africa and the Southern African region.

In 2017, in partnership with Nedbank, the SolarTurtle team launched its 100% renewable energy powered "mobile bank in a shipping container" in Mncwasa village in the remote Mbhashe Local Municipality in the Eastern Cape.

This cashless, wireless enabled branch is a pilot that seeks to understand the feasibility of switching away from the Telkom and Eskom networks, which are vulnerable to factors such as cable theft and unscheduled downtimes.

The lessons will be used to guide a possible roll-out in remote rural areas in South Africa and the rest of the continent. The SolarTurtle initiative also received support from the European

Union, securing a contract for the roll-out of the initiative in Lesotho to empower women entrepreneurs with access to clean forms of energy.

Square Kilometre Array (SKA)

The SKA project is an important endeavour for Africa, with huge potential to contribute to and raise the profile of science, technology and innovation. The SKA Project is an international enterprise to build the largest and most sensitive radio telescope in the world, and will be located in Africa and Australia.

Supported by 10 member countries – Australia, Canada, China, India, Italy, New Zealand, South Africa, Sweden, The Netherlands and the United Kingdom – SKA Organisation has brought together some of the world's finest scientists, engineers and policy makers and more than 100 companies and research institutions across 20 countries in the design and development of the telescope. The MeerKAT, a precursor to the SKA Project, was being constructed near Carnarvon in the Northern Cape. The final MeerKAT will comprise 64 antennas, and will be integrated into the mid-frequency component of the SKA Phase 1.

Until the SKA is completed, the MeerKAT will be the most sensitive radio interferometer in the L-Band in the world. The sensitivity is expected to be more than 300 square metre per Kelvin (m2/K), well above the 220 m2/K originally specified.

By mid-2017, a total of 45 antennas and 57 pedestals had been installed as part of Meerkat. About 75% of MeerKAT components have been sourced locally.

Hydrogen Fuel Cell Technology (HFCT)

Local HFCT development holds the promise of boosting manufacturing capacity and competitiveness in South Africa.

This forms part of the technologies identified in government's Nine-Point Plan, which seeks to boost the economy and create much-needed jobs. HFCT has been indentified as a clean and reliable alternative energy source to fossil fuels.

The DST is making good progress in implementing the Hydrogen SA (HySA) Strategy, demonstrating fuel cell technology as a viable source of clean energy in South Africa.

In the 2017/18 financial year, the DST installed the first HySA-developed fuel cell system at Poelano Secondary School in the North West. The system is providing reliable power for lighting and computer equipment. This initiative demonstrates how renewable energy can meet the needs of communities without access to the main electricity grid.

Titanium metal powder project

The DST supports the Titanium Metal Powder Project, which has a potentially significant economic impact for South Africa.

Titanium is used in industries such as aerospace, medical applications, transport and chemocal processing to create high-performance, lighweight parts.

The titanium powder is also used in 3D printing, which is considered an alternative mode of manufacturing.

National Bio-economy Strategy

The DST's Bio-economy Strategy positions bio-innovation as essential to the achievement of government's industrial and social development goals.

The strategy provides a high-level framework to guide biosciences research and innovation investments, as well as decision-making as South Africa adapts to the realities of global transition to a low-carbon economy.

Through the Bio-economy Strategy, bio-innovation would be used to generate sustainable economic, social and environmental development. The DST was aiming to have biotechnology make up 5% of the country's gross domestic product by 2050.

The strategy focused on three sectors namely agriculture, health and industrial applications and is also closely linked to other policies such as the Industrial Policy Action Plan, the NDP and the New Growth Path.

The department seeks to use bio-innovation to contribute to the achievement of government's industrial, health and social development goals, as well as to the development of indigenous knowledge applications.

Entities

Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf)

The ASSAf aspires to be the apex organisation for science and scholarship in South Africa, recognised and connected both nationally and internationally.

Through its membership, which represents the collective voice of the most active scholars in all fields of scholarly enquiry, ASSAf aims to generate evidence-based solutions to national problems.

As the only national science academy to be officially recognised by the South African government, ASSAf recognises and rewards excellence; promotes innovation and scholarly activity; provides effective, evidence-based scientific advice to government and other stakeholders;promotes public interest in and awareness of science and science education; and promotes national, regional and international linkages.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR is a world-class African research and development organisation, which was established through in 1945. It undertakes directed, multidisciplinary research and technological innovation that contributes to the improved quality of life of South Africans.

The organisation plays a key role in supporting government's programmes through directed research that is aligned with the country's priorities, the organisation's mandate, and its science, engineering and technology areas of competence.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The HSRC is mandated to initiate, undertake and foster strategic basic and applied policy research in the human sciences, and to gather, analyse and publish data relevant to developmental challenges in South Africa, elsewhere in Africa and in the rest of the world.

National Advisory Council on Innovation (NACI)

The NACI, established by the NACI Act of 1997, is a statutory advisory board that advises the Minister of Science and Technology, and through the Minister, the Cabinet, on the role and contribution of science, mathematics, innovation and technology in promoting and achieving national objectives. The Act gives NACI a broad policy (advisory) mandate over all matters intrinsic to the functioning of the national system of innovation (NSI)

National Research Foundation (NRF)

The primary objective of the NRF is to contribute to the improvement of the quality of life of all the people of the country through the promotion of a knowledge economy based on the generation, transfer and use of knowledge. The organisation therefore promotes and supports research through the provision of grants and bursaries, research infrastructure, international and industry collaboration opportunities and mobility through all the stages of a researcher's career, across the spectrum of basic, applied, and strategic research, with an appropriate mix of programmes and funding mechanisms, in alignment to national priorities.

The NRF also supports and promotes awareness of and engagement with science to improve the level of science literacy and public participation in science, technology, engineering, mathematics and innovation.

South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP)

The SACNASP is the regulatory body for natural science practitioners (professional natural scientists, natural scientists in training, natural science technologists and natural science technologists in training) in South Africa.

South African National Space Agency (SANSA)

SANSA is mandated to promote the peaceful use of space; support the creation of an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology; foster research in space science, communications, navigation and space physics; advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies and capabilities through human capital development, outreach programmes and infrastructure development; and foster international cooperation in space-related activities.

SANSA provides space weather knowledge, expertise, products and services through the SANSA Space Weather Centre, which is the only Regional Warning Centre for Africa under the International Space Environment Service. It is also the only organisation performing compass swings in South Africa, making it an invaluable service to the nation and ensuring the safety of thousands of planes every year.

Technology Innovation Agency (TIA)

TIA is mandated to provide customer-centric technology development funding and support, to provide an enabling environment for technology innovation in collaboration with other role players, and to develop an effective and efficient internal environment for the execution of the strategy.

Research and science bodies

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS provides standardisation and conformity assessment services to protect the integrity of the South African market, protect consumers, create a competitive advantage for South African industry, and facilitate access by South Africans to local and international markets. The bureau is the sole publisher of South African national standards.

National Intellectual Property Management Office (NIPMO)

NIPMO provides support to the offices of technology transfer at publicly funded research institutions, which has led to significantly improved intellectual property management in universities and other research institutions.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC conducts fundamental and applied research with partners to generate knowledge, develop human capital, and foster innovation in agriculture by developing technology and disseminating information.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral research organisation, develops appropriate and innovative technology for transfer to the minerals industry; and provides the industry with test work, consultancy, analytics and mineralogical services.

Council for Geoscience (CGS)

As a scientific research council, the CGS provides for the promotion of research and the extension of knowledge in the field of geoscience as well as the provision of specialised geoscientific services.

South African Medical Research Council

The SAMRC is an independent statutory body that coordinates health and medical research activities throughout South Africa. The scope of the organisation's research projects includes tuberculosis, HIV and AIDS, cardiovascular and non-communicable diseases, gender and health, and alcohol and other drug abuse.

With a strategic objective to help strengthen the health systems of the country, in line with that of the Department of Health, the SAMRC constantly identifies the main causes of death in South Africa.

The SAMRC distinguishes and awards scientific excellence with its annual Scientific Merit Awards Gala Ceremony. These awards acknowledge the contributions of established scientists on the one hand, while recognising fresh scientists with ground-breaking efforts in their individual fields of science, engineering and technology.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa with the responsibility of supporting the national and provincial health departments in the delivery of healthcare.

The NHLS provides laboratory and related public health services to over 80% of the population through a national network of laboratories. Its specialised divisions include the National Institute for Communicable Diseases, National Institute for Occupational Health, National Cancer Registry and Antivenom Unit.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER primarily focuses on the South African macro economy and selected economic sectors. It monitors and forecasts macroeconomic economic and sector trends, and identifies and analyses local and international factors that affect South African businesses.

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analyses of data pertaining to the programme is undertaken.

South Africa's National Energy Development Institute (SANEDI)

The main function of SANEDI is to direct, monitor and conduct applied energy research and development, demonstration and deployment as well to undertake specific measures to promote the uptake of Green Energy and Energy Efficiency in South Africa.

National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF)

The mission of the NARF is to facilitate consensus and integrate coordination in the fields of research, development, and technology transfer to agriculture in order to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC aims to develop and support a water-related knowledge base in South Africa, with all the necessary competencies and capacity vested in the corps of experts and practitioners within academia, science councils, other research organisations and government organisations (central, provincial and local) which serve the water sector.

The WRC provides the country with applied knowledge and water-related innovation, by continuously translating needs into research ideas and, in turn, transferring research results and disseminating knowledge and new technology-based products and processes to end-users.

Institute for Water Research (IWR)

The IWR is a multidisciplinary research department of Rhodes University. The objectives of the IWR are to contribute to the knowledge of and promote the understanding and wise use of natural water resources in southern Africa.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

SAEON is a research facility that establishes and maintains nodes (environmental observatories, field stations or sites) linked by an information management network to serve as research and education platforms for long-term studies of ecosystems that will provide for incremental advances in the understanding of ecosystems and the ability to detect, predict and react to environmental change.

Fluorspar industry

South Africa has the world's largest reserves of fluorspar, with estimated reserves of 41 million tons. The country supplies around 10% of the flouride requirements to the global flourochemicals industry.

South African Women in Science Awards (SAWiSA)

The DST has been hosting the prestigious event since 2003 to recognise the achievements of women scientists and provide motivation for the increased participation of women in research.

The awards profile women scientists and researchers, and encourage and reward the next generation of young women who are starting their careers as researchers and scientists.

The 2018 edition of SAWiSA was held in Polokwane on 23 August 2018 under the theme: "100 years of Mama Albertina Sisulu: Women united in moving South Africa forward".

In 2018, the DST introduced an Astronomy category, and kickstarted this category with the presentation of a Minister's Special Award, the Commemorative MeerKAT Award.

This special award celebrated the launch of the completed 64-dish MeerKAT telescope array in the Northern Cape on 13 July, and the significant achievements of women in the field of astronomy.

As part of celebrating the centenary year of Struggle stalwart Mama Albertina Sisulu, who formed part of the Women's March to Pretoria in 1956, the DST also renamed its Fellowships category for Master's and Doctoral students to the DST-Albertina Sisulu Fellowships.

The personal prizes have been increased by R15 000 per award, and Tata Africa has also increased the value of the Tata Scholarships by R15 000 per award (from R60 000 to R75 000). Winners of the Distinguished Women Scientists Awards:

- Dr Mathabatha Evodia Setati – Natural (Physical and Life) and Engineering Sciences.

- Prof Maureen Nokuthula Sibiya – Humanities and Social Science.

Winners of the Distinguished Young Women Scientists Awards:

- Prof Adrienne Edkins – Natural (Physical and Life) and Engineering Sciences.
- Prof Nicolene Barkhuizen – Humanities and Social Sciences.
- Prof Keolebogile Shirley Motaung – Research and Innovation.
- Prof Susan Ilani Loubser – Astronomy.

The winner of the Commemorative MeerKAT Award:

- Prof Renée Kraan-Korteweg.

Winners of the DST-Albertina Sisulu Fellowships (Doctoral) Award:

- Ms Isa Lambrechts – Natural (Physical and Life) and Engineering Sciences.
- Ms Zakeera Docrat – Humanities and Social Sciences.

The winner of the DST-Albertina Sisulu Fellowships (Master's) Award:

- Ms Innocensia Mokgohlwe Mangoato – Natural (Physical and Life) and Engineering Sciences.

The winner of the Tata Scholarships (Doctoral) Award:

- Ms Edith Phalane.

The winner of the Tata Scholarships (Master's) Award:

- Ms Olayile Ejekwu.

International partnership

The year 2018 year marked a decade since South Africa entered into a collaboration with the European Organisation for Nuclear Research (CERN), best known for major breakthroughs such as the discovery of the Higgs-Boson particle in 2012.

The research programme in fundamental physics at CERN's Large Hadron Collider has brought many opportunities for South Africa's science community.

South Africa has since established a very strong footprint and visibility at CERN, and also made a significant contribution to the discovery of the Higgs boson. The particle completed the Standard Model of Particle Physics, the current best theory of understanding nature at the level of particles.

South African researchers have been involved in several activities at CERN, and as a result of support from the DST, a fifth group, the SA-CERN Technology Transfer Group, was by end of 2018 being established to exploit the great potential of technology transfer to the South African industry.

By mid-2018, there were 80 South African students working at CERN, with several more eager to join the programme.

Black student representation was also expected to increase from 35% in 2014 to 65% in 2019, and women representation is expected to increase from 30% in 2013 to 50% in 2019.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Social Development

The Department of Social Development (DSD) was established in terms of several pieces of legislation, including the Social Assistance Act of 2004, which provides a legislative framework for providing social assistance.

The Act sets out the different types of grants payable, as well as their qualifying criteria. It also makes provision for the establishment of the inspectorate for social assistance. Other pieces of legislation which define the department's mandate include the:

- **Non-Profit Organisations Act of 1997**, which establishes an administrative and regulatory framework within which non-profit organisations can conduct their affairs, and provides for their registration by the department.
- **Older Persons Act of 2006**, which establishes a framework for empowering and protecting older persons, and promoting and maintaining their status, rights, well-being, safety and security. It provides for older persons to enjoy good quality services while staying with their families in their communities for as long as possible. It also makes provision for older persons to live in residential care facilities.
- **Children's Act of 2005**, which sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children, and defines parental responsibilities and rights. It deals with early childhood development (ECD), drop-in centres and early intervention, children in alternative care such as foster care, child and youth care centres and the adoption of children. The national ECD policy aims to define the provision of equitable ECD services in South Africa.
- **Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act of 2008**, which regulates substance abuse services and facilities.
- ***1998 White Paper on Population Policy for South Africa***, which is aimed at promoting the sustainable development of all South Africans by integrating population issues with development planning in all spheres of government and all sectors of society.
- ***2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities***, which focuses on putting in place measures that will reduce the exclusion and inequality experienced by persons with disabilities. This includes contributing towards fighting poverty among persons with disabilities and their families, and providing policy guidelines on building capacity in the public sector to deliver equitable and accessible services.
- ***1997 White Paper for Social Welfare***, which sets out the principles, guidelines, policies and programmes for developmental social welfare in South Africa. It provides the foundation for social welfare in the post-1994 era.

The department has revised the Draft White Paper on Social Development to affirm the principles of South Africa's social developmental approach. In this framework, developmental social welfare is measured by elements such as the promotion of human rights; the use of partnerships to deliver services; the integration of socio-economic programmes to improve service delivery.

Role players

Ministry of Women

The Ministry of Women is situated in The Presidency. Its mandate is to lead, coordinate and oversee the transformation agenda on women's socio-economic empowerment, rights and equality. South Africa is a signatory to the Southern African Development Community Protocol on Gender and Development. The protocol prohibits marriages of girls below the age of 18 and is consistent with the objective of "She Conquers Campaign", which is a national campaign aimed at empowering adolescent girls and young women. It aims to keep young girls at school up to the age of 24.

The Department of Women derives its mandate from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and the presidential proclamation made in 2014 that mandates the department to champion gender equality, and the achievement of women's socio-economic empowerment and rights.

National Development Agency (NDA)

The NDA focuses on strengthening the institutional capacity of civil society organisations that provide services to poor communities. The agency also promotes consultation and dialogue between civil society and the State, debates policy development and conducts research.

Capacity-building interventions ensure that recipients of grant funding are not only given money to start and run their projects, but that they are empowered with the necessary skills to ensure sustainability.

The NDA's Programme Management Unit provides project management services to private and public-sector stakeholders who wish to fund poverty-eradication projects.

Particular emphasis is placed on those in the NDA's primary areas of focus, namely food security, ECD, enterprise development and income-generation programmes.

National Youth Development Agency (NYDA)

The main role of the NYDA is to initiate, implement, facilitate and monitor youth development interventions aimed at reducing youth unemployment and promoting social cohesion. South Africa, like most countries, is grappling with the challenge of youth unemployment.

The Youth Employment Accord (2013) and the Skills Accord (2011) – signed by business, government, labour, civil society and NGOs – aim to improve the equipping and placement of young people in jobs, and generally make the economy sensitive to the employment needs of young people.

Government strives to provide an opportunity to raise the share of youth-owned businesses and to support youth to engage in cooperatives in the country.

South African Social Security Agency (SASSA)

SASSA's objectives are to ensure the effective and efficient administration, management, and payment of social assistance grants. The agency's core business is to administer and pay social assistance transfers.

The agency has a large network of centres where citizens can apply for social grants. It also manages a large payment system of more than 17 million social grants each month.

The new gold SASSA card operates fully within the national payment system and it has the following benefits for social-grant beneficiaries:

- Three cash withdrawals from any participating merchant (such as Shoprite, Boxer, etc);
- One free over-the-counter cash withdrawal at the South African Post Office;
- Unlimited free swipes (purchase payments) at all merchants;
- One free ATM balance enquiry per month;
- The only deduction permitted is for funeral policies, up to no more than 10% of the grant value.

Programmes and projects

Improving the provision of ECD services

ECD refers to the processes by which children from birth to at least nine years grow and thrive, physically, mentally, emotionally, spiritually, morally and socially. The South African Government recognises that increasing access to, as well as improving the quality of ECD provision, will contribute significantly to improving the learning outcomes of children within the basic education sector.

Project Mikondzo

Project Mikondzo (which means "footprint" in Xitsonga) is a nationwide service-delivery initiative to assess the footprint and impact of the social development system.

Through direct interactions with municipalities and community members, Project Mikondzo aims to monitor service delivery at community level, determine the gap between policy formulation and implementation, and understand service-delivery challenges and backlogs.

The project provides a platform for profiling households and communities, and developing community and household intervention plans. The intention is to profile 300 000 households and develop 2 400 community plans in 1 256 municipal wards between 2016/17 and 2018/19.

Tackling substance abuse

Substance abuse is a key social challenge in many South African communities, and the Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act of 2008 prescribes that each province must have at least one public treatment centre. The DSD has intensified its efforts to prevent and treat substance abuse by implementing the national anti-substance abuse programme of action.

Gender-Based Violence Command Centre (GBVCC)

The GBVCC is a 24-hour call centre that was launched in March 2014 to provide immediate, consistent, coordinated and timely support and counselling to victims of GBV. The GBVCC is linked to the services of the police, emergency medical services and the Department of Health.

The toll-free number to call to speak to a social worker for assistance and counselling is 0800 428 428 (0800 GBV GBV). Callers can also request a social worker from the Command Centre to contact them by dialling *120*7867# (free) from any cellphone.

The GBVCC has attended to a variety emergency situations including indecent assault, physical violence, rape, abandoned children and verbal abuse. It has also attended to cases such as stalking, emotional abuse, sexual harassment, forced marriages, forced prostitution, elderly citizen abuse, bullying and family disputes.

The GBVCC uses technology to geographically locate a caller from a mobile phone in order to determine the resources nearest to the caller such as a social worker, a police station, a hospital or safe house.

Social security

Social assistance protects against inequality and poverty, and promotes the social and financial inclusion of the economically inactive population. It is the responsibility of the DSD to provide social welfare services to the most vulnerable members of society. The department aims to achieve the following by 2019:

- Strengthen social welfare service delivery through legislative and policy review; and
- Promote, protect and empower persons with disabilities through the development and implementation of legislation, policies and programmes.

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey 2017, the percentage of individuals that benefited from social grants consistently increased from 12,8% in 2003 to 30,8% in 2017.

Simultaneously, the percentage of households that received at least one grant increased from 30,8% to 43,8% in 2017. Grant beneficiaries were most common in Eastern Cape (41,8%), Limpopo (40,1%), Northern Cape (37,5%) and KwaZulu-Natal (36,4%). By comparison, only 18,7% of individuals in Gauteng and 22,5% in Western Cape were beneficiaries.

More than one-third of black African individuals (33,8%) received a social grant, compared to 29,3% of coloured individuals, and 14,5% of Indian/Asian individuals. By comparison, only 6,1% of the white population received grants.

Th survey found that 21,2% of all individuals, and 33,5% of all households in metropolitan areas received some kind of social grant. Large differences were noted between cities. Nearly three-tenths of individuals in Buffalo City (29,6%) and Nelson Mandela Bay (28,5%) benefitted from social grants, compared to less than one-fifth in City of Tshwane (17,7%), City of Johannesburg (18,4%), Ekurhuleni (19,2%) and City of Cape Town (19,4%).

The Child-Support and Old-Age grants are the two largest social grant programmes, constituting about 75% of total grant spending. Others are the War Veterans, Disability, Grant-in-Aid, Foster Child and Care Dependency grants.

Access to food

In South Africa, although household access to food has improved since 2002, it has remained relatively static since 2011. The Household Food Insecurity Access Scale, which is aimed at determining households' access to food, showed that the percentage of South African households with inadequate or severely inadequate access to food decreased from 23,6% in 2010 to 21,3% in 2017. During this time, the percentage of individuals that were at risk of going hungry decreased from 29,1% to 24,7%.

Between 2002 and 2017, the percentage of households that experienced hunger decreased from 24,2% to 10,4% while the percentage of individuals who experienced hunger decreased from 29,3% to 12,1.

HIV and AIDS support

South Africa is continually striving to do more to stop new HIV infections and prevent AIDS-related deaths. In March 2017, the country launched its third five-year National Strategic Plan (NSP) on HIV, Sexually Transmitted Infections and Tuberculosis (2017–2022) under the slogan "Let Our Actions Count". The NSP, a guide for the country's response to these infections, seeks to reduce new HIV infections by 63% – from 270 000 in 2016 to less than 100 000 by 2022.

People with disabilities

In March 2016, government released the *White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities* (WPRPD) for public comment.

The White Paper is a call to action for government, civil society and the private sector to work together to ensure the socio-economic inclusion of persons with disabilities. Government seeks to create a caring and inclusive society that protects and develops the human potential of its children, a society for all where persons with disabilities enjoy the same rights as their fellow citizens, and where all citizens and institutions share equal responsibility for building such a society.

The WPRPD is intended to accelerate transformation and redress regarding full inclusion, integration and equality for persons with disabilities.

South Africa has been celebrating the annual International Day for Persons with Disabilities since 1997. According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey 2017, some 4,2% of South Africans aged five years and older were classified as disabled in 2016.

Women (4,5%) were slightly more likely to be disabled than men (3,9%). Northern Cape (7,0%), North West (6,4%), and Eastern Cape (4,9%) presented the highest prevalence of disability in the country.

Children and youth

The Home Community-Based Care programme is the centrepiece of government's interventions to build a protective and caring environment for vulnerable children.

Most services include early identification of vulnerable children and their families, referrals, training of community caregivers and psychosocial support and material assistance, to name a few.

This approach is geared towards keeping children within their families and communities.

It is aimed at providing comprehensive care and support which is complemented by proactive action at community level. This includes linking families with poverty alleviation projects and other services in the community, such as food security initiatives and ECD services.

With effect from 1 April 2018, the Government Employee Pension Fund has introduced the new Child's Pension, which replaces the Orphan's Pension.

It will no longer be necessary for both parents to die first before a child or children can apply for pension. A child qualifies for Child's Pension up to the age of 22, regardless of whether or not the child is a student.

National Youth Policy (NYP)

The NYP for 2015 – 2020 (NYP 2020) focuses on redressing the wrongs of the past and addressing the specific challenges and immediate needs of the country's youth.

The NYP 2020 builds on South Africa's first NYP, which covered the period 2009 – 2014.

The policy seeks to create an environment that enables the young people of South Africa to reach their potential. It outlines interventions to enable the optimal development of young people, both as individuals and as members of South African society, enhancing their capabilities to transform the economy and the country.

This will be achieved by addressing their needs; promoting positive outcomes, opportunities, choices and relationships; and providing the support necessary to develop all young people, particularly those outside the social, political and economic mainstream. The NYP 2020 emphasises the need for various youth development efforts and interventions that holistically respond to all aspects or spheres of young people's lives.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa. The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all of South Africa's official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

South African Braille Authority (SABA)

The SABA was established in May 2012 as an NGO. Its purpose is to set and maintain standards for Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is the coordinating body for over 100-member organisations throughout South Africa. These organisations span the full spectrum of services offered for and to blind and partially sighted persons.

Support for the hearing impaired

South Africa's national organisation for the hearing impaired is the Deaf Federation of South Africa (DeafSA), formerly the South African National Council for the Deaf, which was established in 1929. DeafSA has nine provincial chapters throughout South Africa. An estimated 500 000 to 600 000 South Africans use South African Sign Language.

Other private organisations include the National Institute for the Deaf and the South African National Deaf Association.

Older people

The DSD promotes a holistic approach to active ageing and well-being among the country's senior citizens. A number of initiatives have been rolled out by the departments of social development, health, tourism, sport and recreation South Africa and other stakeholders to promote general health among older persons, especially through sports to promote general well-being.

The government has since 2008 implemented a national active ageing programme in line with the Madrid International Plan of Action on Ageing of 2002.

The Madrid Plan of Action offers a bold new agenda for handling the issue of ageing in the 21st century. It focuses on three priority areas: older persons and development, advancing health and well-being into old age and ensuring enabling and supportive environments.

The Older Persons Act of 2006 aims to enhance the quality of life and improve the health of older persons by engaging them in programmes that promote social, physical, mental and emotional well-being to prevent or delay the onset of ageing challenges and keep old age related illness at bay.

The Older Persons' Parliament takes place annually in October. It gives elders the opportunity to engage with the executive on critical issues affecting their lives.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Sport and Recreation

The Department of Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) oversees the development and management of sport and recreation in South Africa.

The department's work to increase the accessibility of sport and recreation facilities contributes to the achievement of the National Development Plan's goals of nation-building, social cohesion and a healthy national lifestyle, and Outcome 14 (a diverse, socially cohesive society with a common national identity) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Promoting participation in sport and recreation

The SRSA recognises that for citizens to lead healthy lifestyles, they need get into the habit of being active from a young age. Campaigns and events include youth camps, the annual Big Walk, a national recreation day, the national indigenous games festival, the rural sport development programme, and community outreach programmes.

At youth camps, which are attended by more than 2 000 participants from various backgrounds, young people are taught leadership and life skills, and the importance of national pride.

The department supports school sport leagues in partnership with the Department of Basic Education. Young people are given opportunities to showcase their skills at events such as the national school sport championships, which exposes South African sporting talent to national federations and talent scouts.

The department is responsible for hosting the national indigenous games festival, which continues to grow in popularity each year. These games showcase nine indigenous games commonly played in South Africa. All provinces present teams selected from various communities at the games, which are held from the community level to the provincial level.

The games bring people from culturally diverse backgrounds together as part of South Africa's heritage celebrations in September. Indigenous games federations have been established at provincial level and national structures are being formally constituted for all indigenous games.

Supporting the delivery of sport infrastructure

The department was expected to work with the Department of Cooperative Governance, the South African Local Government Association and municipalities to ensure that funds earmarked in the municipal infrastructure grant for the provision of sport and recreation facilities are used to provide facilities in the areas of greatest need.

To encourage participation in sport and recreation, the Sport and Recreation Facility Planning subprogramme will continue to advocate for municipalities to deliver community gyms and children's play parks.

To give local community members and athletes in disadvantaged areas access to opportunities to exercise and improve their health and fitness, 10 community gyms across South Africa are expected to be provided in each year over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period.

The department facilitates the delivery of specialised multipurpose sport courts and other infrastructure projects to improve access to sport and recreation activities through a partnership with the Sports Trust.

Nurturing talent and supporting excellence

The department awards ministerial bursaries to learners in grades 8 to 12 who are identified as talented young athletes. These bursaries are valid for the duration of learners' school careers, and they attend 1 of the 58 sports focus schools in South Africa, which are selected by provincial departments because of their exceptional sports coaching and facilities.

In 2018/19, a minimum of 60 qualifying athletes, including learners already in the programme, were expected to be supported through the payment of school fees, the provision of school uniforms and sport clothing, sport scientific support and event attendance. An additional 40 emerging athletes identified by national federations as having the potential to compete at the high-performance level are also supported by the department each year through specialist training.

A further 40 elite athletes receive advanced coaching and financial support each year through the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee's (SASCOC) high performance programme to help them prepare and perform at the four major multi-code games: the All Africa Games, the World Games, the Commonwealth Games, and the Olympic and Paralympic Games.

Entities

Boxing South Africa (BSA)

The BSA administers professional boxing, recognises amateur boxing, creates synergy between professional and amateur boxing, and promotes interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters and trainers. The organisation's total budget for 2018/19 is R15 million.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS)

The SAIDS promotes participation in sport without the use of prohibited performance enhancing substances and methods, and educates sportspeople on fair play and the harmful effects of the use of prohibited performance enhancing substances and methods.

Role players

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

SASCOC is the national multi-coded sporting body responsible for the preparation, presentation and performance of teams to all multi-coded events, namely the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games, World Games, All Africa Games, Olympic Youth Games, Commonwealth Youth Games and Zone VI Games.

It also look after the various national federations affiliated to it, together with the various provincial sports councils. SASCOC is responsible for the awarding for National Protea Colours to athletes/officials who have met the criteria to represent South Africa in different sporting codes and arenas.

World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The Africa Regional Office of the WADA was established in Cape Town in 2004 to coordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa.

This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between the WADA and all relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national anti-doping agencies and laboratories.

South Africa continues to serve as the African representative on the Executive Committee of WADA.

Programmes and projects

National Sport and Recreation Plan (NSRP)

The NSRP's five strategic objectives are transformation, priority codes, ethical environment, geo-political sports boundaries and amateur versus professional sport.

Major events

Big Walk

The Big Walk is staged on the first Sunday of October to encourage participation in physical activity. The annual Big Walk takes place in October.

Annual National Recreation Day

Although not a public holiday, the day provides an opportunity to all South Africans to be actively involved by participating in recreation activities that will improve their health and well-being.

National Indigenous Games

The National Indigenous Games festival forms part of South Africa's annual heritage celebrations and brings people from culturally diverse backgrounds together. The popularity of the festival in recent years has contributed to an increase in the number of active participants in sport and recreation events.

The games played included khokho, intonga, ncuva, morabaraba, diketo, drie stokkies, kgati, dibeke and juskei, all of which are indigenous to South Africa and played in various parts of the country. The games also provide recreational activities for young children and families.

South African Sports Awards (SASA)

The **12th SASA** ceremony was held in Kempton Park, Gauteng in November 2017.
The winners were:

- **Sportsman of the Year** – Luvo Manyonga.
- **Sportswoman of the Year** – Caster Semenya.
- **Sportsman of the Year with a Disability** – Dyan Buis.
- **People's Choice Sports Star Award** – Caster Semenya.
- **Sportswoman of the Year with a Disability** – Ilse Hayes.
- **Team of the Year** – Springbok Sevens.
- **Coach of the Year** – Jean Verster.
- **Volunteer of the Year** – Samuel Maduwa.
- **Newcomer of the Year** – Sokwakhana Zazini.
- **Indigenous Games Team of the Year** – North West Kho-Kho team.
- **Photographer of the Year** – Simphiwe Nkwali.
- **Sports Journalist Year** – OG Molefe.
- **National Federation of the Year** – Lifesaving SA.
- **Sport Administrator of the Year** – Sanelisiwe Kuzwayo.
- **Recreation Body of the Year** – In-Touch Community Support Group.
- **School Team of the Year** – St Mary's School Waverley.
- **Developing School Team of the Year** – Hlangabeza Primary School u13 chess.

The **13th SASA** ceremony was held in Bloemfotein, Free State in November 2018.
The winners were:

- **Sportsman of the Year** – Chad Le Clos.
- **Sportswoman of the Year** – Caster Semenya.
- **Sportsman of the Year with a Disability** – Ndodomzi Jonathan Ntutu.
- **People's Choice Sports Star Award** – Caster Semenya.
- **Sportswoman of the Year with a Disability** – Anrune Liebenberg.
- **Team of the Year** – Banyana Banyana.
- **Coach of the Year** – Samuel Sepeng.
- **Volunteer of the Year** – Linda Hlophe.
- **Newcomer of the Year** – Tatjan Schoenmaker.
- **Indigenous Games Team of the Year** – Morabaraba Team.
- **Photographer of the Year** – Steve Haag.
- **Sports Journalist Year** – Motshidisi Mohono.
- **National Federation of the Year** – Softball.

- **Sport Administrator of the Year** –Virginia Mabaso.
- **Recreation Body of the Year** – Mavu Sport Development.
- **School Team of the Year** – St Benedict's College.
- **Developing School Team of the Year** – Machakela-Mamodibo Secondary School.

Major sporting activities

Sporting codes

Major sporting codes in South Africa include, among others: Athletics; Biking; Mountain Biking; Cycling; Boxing; Cricket; Canoeing; Rowing; Golf; Hockey; Ice Hockey; Motorsport; Flying; Netball; Rugby; Running (including South Africa's two world-renowned ultra-marathons – the Comrades Marathon in KwaZulu-Natal and the Two Oceans Marathon in the Western Cape); Soccer; Surfing; Sailing; Swimming; Tennis, and Chess.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Tourism

Tourism, with its immense social and economic value, continues to improve the lives of millions of people in South Africa, on the African continent, and around the world.

The mandate of the Department of Tourism (DoT), as outlined in the Tourism Act of 2014, is to:

- promote growth and development of the tourism sector; promote quality tourism products and services;
- provide for the effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a tourist destination; enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism; and
- promote the practice of responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa and for the enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors.

In recognition of tourism as a national priority, with a potential to contribute significantly to economic development, the *1996 White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa* provides for the promotion of domestic and international tourism.

The National Development Plan recognises tourism as one of the main drivers of employment and economic growth, and envisages the promotion of South Africa as a major tourist and business events destination.

Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) and outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework make reference to specific targets towards the realisation of this vision.

Tourism growth

In South Africa, tourism contributed R136,1 billion, about 2.9% of the total gross domestic product (GDP) in 2017. When tourism's indirect and induced benefits across a very broad value chain are factored in, the total contribution amounts to R412,5 billion, or 8.9% of the GDP.

Tourism directly and indirectly supported about 1,5 million jobs in 2017, 9.5% of total employment, and there is potential to grow employment in the sector to 2,1 million jobs by 2028.

This leads to real economic and social transformation for South Africans, especially significant as government, business and many social partners are collaborating to accelerate economic growth and employment.

Cabinet approved the revised National Tourism Sector Strategy was approved in December 2017. It seeks to make international and domestic marketing more effective, facilitate easier travel to South Africa, improve the visitor experience, better manage the destination, and most importantly, spread the benefits of tourism to more South Africans by including more black people, women, youth and rural communities in the tourism value chain.

South Africa continues to play a significant role in the development of tourism on the African continent. Bilateral cooperation agreements in tourism were signed with Zambia, Malawi, and Senegal. South Africa and Namibia have jointly trained a group of tourist guides with knowledge about the history and cultures of both countries.

Travel Indaba

Africa's Travel Indaba took place at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre in KwaZulu-Natal from 8 to 10 May 2018.

Themed "Africa's Stories, Your Success", Africa's Travel Indaba showcased the widest variety of Southern Africa's best tourism products and services, and afford delegates an opportunity to acquaint themselves with the exciting travel experiences on offer, with a view of forging dynamic tourism partnerships.

Indaba is one of the largest tourism marketing events on the African calendar and one of the top three 'must visit' events of its kind on the global calendar. It has won the accolades as Africa's best travel and tourism show awarded by the Association of World Travel Awards.

Entity

South African Tourism (SAT)

SAT markets South Africa internationally and domestically as a preferred tourism and business events destination, ensures that tourist facilities and services are of the highest standard, and monitors and evaluates the performance of the tourism sector.

The Tourism Grading Council of South Africa operates as a business unit of SAT, and is the only recognised and globally credible quality assurance body for tourism products in South Africa.

Tourism in the provinces

Western Cape

The Western Cape is South Africa's most developed tourism region. The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other industry.

One in 10 employees in the Western Cape earns a living in the tourism industry, and it contributes more than R25 billion to the provincial economy.

Key attractions

- Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the official New Seven Wonders of Nature, following a lengthy international public voting process. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.
- The Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, the Company's Gardens, the District Six Museum, the houses of Parliament and the South African National Gallery.
- The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. It houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.
- The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.
- The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.
- All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme. Production is divided into official regions, districts and wards. There are five principle demarcations – Coastal, Breede River Valley, Little Karoo, Olifants River and Boberg, covering 21 districts and 61 wards.
- Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

Garden Route

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining ponts in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. This popular route spans roughly 200 km of South Africa's southern coast, incorporating a picturesque stretch of coastline.

Key attractions

- Attequas Kloof Pass, South African/Anglo-Boer War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex.
- Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.

- The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the Southern Hemisphere.
- Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.
- The Point in Mossel Bay is popular among surfers and its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide.
- Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.
- Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world's largest bird – the ostrich.

Key attractions

- Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas.
- The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit.
- The Little Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in Oudtshoorn annually.
- The Cango Caves, a series of 30 subterranean limestone caves, bear evidence of early San habitation and features magnificent dripstone formations.
- Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards. The Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers.

Northern Cape

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.

Key attractions

- The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the South African/ Anglo-Boer War.
- Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water a day.
- The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.
- The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.
- Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

- Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert.
- Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.
- De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.
- Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

Free State

This central region of South Africa is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Key attractions

- With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses." The city also hosts an annual rose festival.
- Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.
- The National Women's Memorial commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.
- The Gariep Dam, more than 100 km-long and 15 km-wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa.
- Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve.
- Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.
- The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.
- At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.
- The Golden Gate Highlands National Park outside Clarens has beautiful sandstone rock formations.
- The Vredefort Dome, a World Heritage Site, is the oldest and largest meteorite impact site in the world. It was formed about two billion years ago when a giant meteorite hit Earth.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Key attractions

- Port Elizabeth has some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.
- To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. The valley is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.

- Varied game reserves, including the Addo Elephant, Mountain Zebra and Mkambati parks.
- South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.
- Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

Limpopo

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, and ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Key attractions

- The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino outside of the Kruger National Park and the KwaZulu-Natal parks.
- Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa.
- The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.
- The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Asfrica's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

North West

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and attract visitors.

A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park.

Key attractions

- The historic route of Mahikeng includes an South African/ Anglo-Boer War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mahikeng Museum.
- The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can explore the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.
- Ottosdal is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone", or pyrophyllite, is found and mined.
- The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club. The event consists of 42,2-km, 21,1-km,10-km races and a 5-km fun run.
- San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein.

Mpumalanga

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves.

Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Key attractions

- Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September every year.
- The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.
- Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular destination among mountain bikers. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry.
- The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.
- The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.
- At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February every year.
- The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.

Gauteng

'Gauteng' is a Sesotho word meaning "place of gold". It is the smallest province of South Africa and also the most populous and urbanized. It is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life.

Key attractions

- Natural areas include the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve (Heidelberg); Braamfontein Spruit Trust, The Wilds on Houghton and the Klipriviersberg Nature Reserve in Johannesburg; the Kloofendal Nature Reserve and Walter Sisulu Botanical Gardens (in Roodepoort); and the National Botanical Garden, Smuts House Museum, and Freedom Park in Pretoria; as well as the Tswaing Crater Trail.
- A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre in Kyalami.
- The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the skull of the famous Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil; and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton of more than 3,3 million years old.
- The Constitution Hill Precinct is set to become one of South Africa's most popular landmarks.
- A guided tour of Soweto leaves a lasting impression of this vast community's life and struggle against apartheid.
- The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg tells the story of the legacy of apartheid through photographs, film and artefacts.
- The Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory opened its doors to the public following the death of former President Nelson Mandela, in December 2013.
- The Union Buildings celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913. It has since been the setting for presidential inaugurations. It is also the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day and Freedom Day. In December 2013, a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.

- The National Zoological Gardens in Pretoria is considered one of the 10 best in the world.
- The old mining town of Cullinan is where the world's biggest diamond, the 3 106-carat Cullinan diamond, was found.

KwaZulu-Natal

One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Swaziland and Mozambique to the north.

Key attractions

- The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces, which includes an outdoor restaurant, a zoo and a playground for children.
- Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile, Dolphin Mile open water swimming events, the July Handicap horse-race, the Amashova-shova cycle tour, and the Spar Mercury Ladies 10 km Challenge.
- The Weza State Forest in East Griqualand runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.
- St Lucia and its surroundings comprises the iSimangaliso Wetland Park that have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and bird watching paradise. Boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay.
- The Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, one of the largest game parks in South Africa, is home to the Big Five, as well as cheetah and wild dogs.
- The Battlefields Route in northern KwaZulu-Natal has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.
- The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.
- Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and power-boating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park has rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl.

Top-10 reasons to visit South Africa

1. Affordable – In South Africa, you can even afford luxury and have spending money for shopping and other treats.

2. Natural beauty – South Africa's scenic wonders are legendary. From Table Mountain to God's Window, the mountains, forests, coasts and deserts will sooth your soul and delight you.

3. World-class facilities – You will find it easy to get around, find a comfortable place to stay and have a great meal.

4. Adventure – South Africa is the adventure capital of the world. With over 130 adventures, there is something for everyone from mountain walks to shark-cage diving.

5. Good weather – In sunny South Africa with a great weather, you can enjoy the outdoors, play golf year-round and take advantage of the nearly 3 000 km coastline.

6. Rainbow Nation – The Rainbow Nation celebrates all its African and immigrant cultures. South Africans are known for their friendliness and hospitality.

7. Diverse experiences – Go almost anywhere in South Africa and experience the ultimate combination of nature, wildlife, culture, adventure, heritage and good vibe.

8. Wildlife – The ubundant and diverse wildlife include the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).

9. Freedom Struggle – Discover a nation's struggle for freedom whilst following the footsteps of Nelson Mandela, Hector Pieterson and many other celebrated revolutionaries.
10. Responsible tourism – In South Africa you can travel with care as you explore protected areas, contribute to social and conservation projects, and collect arts and crafts.

Traveller's Guide

1. Arriving in South Africa – All travellers arriving in South Africa at land, sea or air ports of entry are required to pass through immigration control, a service offered by the South African Department of Home Affairs, on arrival and before collecting their baggage. Thereafter they have to pass through customs control which falls under the auspices of the South African Revenue Service (SARS).

Travellers with goods to declare must complete a Traveller Card and make a verbal declaration of their goods to a Customs Officer, who will then generate a Traveller Declaration.

Baggage may be X-rayed or examined by Customs officers to detect dutiable, restricted or prohibited goods and you may be questioned. Should travellers be found to be carrying undeclared, restricted or prohibited goods they could be fined or face prosecution.

2. Prohibited and restricted goods (A full list of Prohibited and Restricted goods is available on the SARS website: *www.sars.gov.za*) – It is illegal to bring in the following prohibited goods to South Africa:

- Narcotics: All narcotic and psychotropic substances, as well as habit-forming drugs such as cannabis, heroin, cocaine, Mandrax, Ecstasy and any paraphernalia relating to their use;
- Firearms, weapons and ammunition: Fully automatic, military and unnumbered weapons, explosives and fireworks and weapons of mass destruction;
- Poison and other toxic substances;
- Cigarettes with a mass of more than 2kg per 1 000;
- Goods to which a trade description or trademark is applied in contravention of any Act (for example, counterfeit goods);
- Unlawful reproductions of any works subject to copyright; and
- Prison-made and penitentiary-made goods.

3. Goods you have to declare – Certain goods may only be imported if you are in possession of the necessary authority/
permit and these have to be declared on arrival. These include:

- Currency: South African bank notes in excess of R25 000, gold coins, coin and stamp collections and unprocessed gold.
- Endangered plants and animals: Species of plants or animals that are listed as endangered, whether they are alive or dead. The restriction includes any parts of and articles made from them.The restriction includes any parts of and articles made from them;
- Food, plants, animals and biological goods: All plants and plant products, such as seeds, flowers, fruit, honey, margarine and vegetable oils. All animals, birds, poultry and products thereof, for example, dairy products, butter and eggs;
- Medicines: Travellers are allowed to bring in no more than three months' supply of pharmaceutical drugs and medicines for their personal use. All other pharmaceutical drugs and medicines have to be declared and have to be accompanied by a letter or certified prescription from a registered physician.

4. Duty-free allowances – The following goods may be imported into South Africa without the payment of Customs duty and Value-Added Tax (VAT):

- Consumable goods in accompanied baggage. Goods falling within the following allowances may be imported without the payment of Customs duty and VAT as accompanied baggage. Crew members, including the master of a ship and the pilot of an aircraft, are only entitled to this rebate provided such members are returning to South Africa permanently. No more than: 200 cigarettes and 20 cigars per person; 250g of cigarette or pipe tobacco perperson; 50ml perfumery and 250ml eau de toilette per person; Two litres of wine per person; 1 litre in total of spiritous and other alcoholic beverages per person.

Persons under 18 years of age may claim duty-free allowances on goods imported by them, with the exception of alcohol and tobacco products, whether or not they are accompanied by their parents or guardians and provided that it is for their personal use.

- Personal effects, sporting and recreational equipment.Visitors may bring in new or used personal effects, sporting and recreational equipment either as accompanied or unaccompanied baggage, for own use during their visit. You may be required to lodge a cash deposit to cover the potential duty/tax on expensive articles pending their re-exportation. The deposit will be refunded on departure after a Customs officer has physically inspected the items and verified that they are being re-exported. Visitors must notify the Customs office at which the deposit was lodged at least two days before departure to ensure that the refund is ready. You will find the office number on the documents which will be given to you when lodging your deposit.

If you are departing from a port other than the port where you lodged the deposit, the inspection report confirming the re-exportation of the items will be forwarded to the office where the deposit was lodged and a cheque will be posted to the address you had provided.

Residents of South Africa who had exported new or used personal effects, sporting and recreational equipment for their own use while abroad can bring these back either as accompanied or unaccompanied baggage.

Any goods such as jewellery which were exchanged, remodelled, processed or repaired while you were abroad, do not fall within this allowance and must be declared for duty assessment purposes. They include **new and used goods.**

In addition to the personal effects and consumable goods allowances, travellers are allowed new or used goods in accompanied baggage to the value of R5 000 (or R25 000 if arriving from Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia or Swaziland).

This allowance is only valid once per person during a 30-day period and does not apply to goods imported by persons returning after an absence of less than 48 hours.

Crew members (including the master or the pilot) are only entitled to a duty-free allowance on a value not exceeding R700. Consumable goods as mentioned above are excluded from this entitlement.

5. Goods on which duty has to be paid – Other than those specified above, all goods and gifts acquired abroad are subject to the payment of Customs duty and VAT when they are brought into South Africa. This includes goods purchased dutyfree on board aircraft and ships or in duty-free shops.

Customs duties and taxes are payable in rands, the currency of South Africa. Goods that attract duty and do not qualify for the flat rate assessment explained below include:

- Firearms acquired abroad or at any duty-free shop imported by residents of South Africa returning after an absence of less than six months;
- Goods for commercial purposes; and
- Goods carried on behalf of other persons.

In cases where residents of South Africa who are travelling abroad have had goods such jewellery re-modelled, processed or repaired, duty is payable on the costs incurred in these processes.

In cases where goods have been exchanged, duty is payable on the full value of the article received in exchange. These goods may qualify the duty free allowance of R5 000 and the flat-rate assessment. Returning residents must ensure that the goods in question are clearly described and that they can provide documentary proof of these transaction(s) and the costs involved.

Travellers have the option to pay Customs duty at a flat rate of 20% on goods acquired abroad or in any duty-free shop to expedite their passage through Customs. The total value of these additional goods, new or used, may not exceed R20 000 per person. Flat-rated goods are also exempted from payment of VAT.

This option can only be chosen if the total value of goods imported does not exceed R25 000 in value. This excludes consumable goods in excess of the quantities specified under duty-free allowances.

If the value of the additional goods exceeds R20 000 or if you decide not to use the flat rate option, the appropriate rates of duty and VAT will have to be assessed and paid on each individual item. In addition, 15% VAT will be payable on the assessed goods.

This flat-rate assessment will be allowed unlimited times per person during a period of 30 days and shall not apply to goods imported by persons returning after an absence of less than 48 hours.

The flat-rate assessment may be used by those under 18 years of age, provided the goods are for their own use. In the case of crew members, including the master of a ship or the pilot of an aircraft, the value of the items that may be assessed on a flat-rate basis is restricted to R2 000 per person.

6. Travellers in transit – Travellers in transit to countries outside the Southern African Customs Union (SACU), Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Swaziland, who have been booked from an airport outside the common customs area, will not be required to comply with Customs formalities in South Africa.

Travellers arriving in South Africa and taking a connecting flight to another SACU member country will be required to complete all Customs formalities upon arrival. Baggage belonging to passengers in transit will automatically be transferred from the international flight at the airport of transit in South Africa.

These passengers may not leave the transit area of the airport between flights. Should you travel to your final destination by road, Customs formalities must be complied with at the port of arrival in South Africa.

7. Refund of tax on visitors' purchases – VAT at a rate of 15% is levied on the purchase of most goods in South Africa. Tourists and foreign visitors to South Africa may apply for a refund of the VAT paid at departure points.

The tax invoices for the purchases and the goods must be presented for inspection to the VAT Refund Administrator. No refund will be made if the claim is not lodged before departure.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Transport

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 identifies the legislative responsibilities of different spheres of government with regard to airports, roads, traffic management and public transport. Transport is a function that is legislated and executed at the national, provincial and local spheres of government.

The implementation of transport functions at the national level takes place through public entities that are overseen by the department, each with a specific delivery mandate, as specified in legislation establishing these entities.

The *1996 White Paper on Transport* defines the infrastructure and operations of rail, pipelines, roads, airports, harbours, and the intermodal operations of public transport and freight.

The Department of Transport (DoT) is responsible for the legislation and policies for all these sub-sectors. The department is therefore responsible for conducting sector research, formulating legislation and policy to set the strategic direction of sub-sectors, assigning responsibilities to public entities and other spheres of government, regulating through setting norms and standards, and monitoring implementation.

Chapter 4 of the National Development Plan (NDP) calls for the development of economic infrastructure as the foundation of social and economic development. This call is given action by outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework, which is directly aligned with the work of the DoT.

Over the medium term, the department plans to focus on improving mobility and access to social and economic activities by facilitating and creating an enabling environment for maintaining provincial and national road networks, modernising passenger rail infrastructure and improving services, and integrating public transport.

The department's strategic goals are to, among other things, ensure an efficient and integrated infrastructure network that serves as a catalyst for social and economic development; ensure a safe and secure transport sector; improve rural access, infrastructure and mobility; improve public transport systems, and increase the contribution of the transport sector to job creation.

Transport infrastructure and services support economic growth and development by connecting people and goods to markets. The development and maintenance of an efficient and competitive transport system is a key objective of the NDP.

The DoT aims to maintain the national and provincial road networks, upgrade rail infrastructure and services, and expand road based public transport.

The implementation of transport functions at the national sphere takes place through public entities that are overseen by the department.

The 12 public entities under the Ministry of Transport are the **Airports Company South Africa (ACSA)**; **Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (PRASA)**; **South African National Roads Agency Ltd (SANRAL); Ports Regulator of South Africa**; **Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS)**; **Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA)**; **Railway Safety Regulator**; **Road Accident Fund (RAF)**; **Road Traffic Infringement Agency (RTIA)**; **Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC)**; **South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA)** and **South African Maritime Safety Authority (SAMSA)**. Commercial role players include Transnet, South African Airways (SAA) and South African Express (SAX).

Airports Company South Africa

The ACSA was formed to own and operate the nine principal South African airports, including the three main international gateways: OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, Cape Town International Airport and King Shaka International Airport in Durban.

The company is one of the concessionaires operating Mumbai International Airport in India and Guarulhos International Airport in Sao Paulo, Brazil.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

PRASA provides rail commuter services within, to and from South Africa in the public interest. In consultation with the DoT, the agency also provides for long-haul passenger rail and bus services within, to and from South Africa.

Over the medium term, PRASA aimed to improve the safety and reliability of, and the access to, rail services by maintaining and refurbishing existing train sets, acquiring new rolling stock, and investing in capital for the upgrade and modernisation of railway signalling and other infrastructure, including depots and stations.

During the 2017/18 financial year, the major spending on the capital budget transferred to PRASA, was directed on the modernisation process to replace the signalling systems, ageing rolling stock and upgrade of rail infrastructure.

A major achievement was on the rolling stock fleet renewal programme, a catalyst for the transformation of Metrorail as a whole, as part of the Government's Comprehensive Rail Programme over the next two decades. The three main deliverables of the Rolling Stock Renewal Programme whose delivery cuts across the medium term were achieved as follows:

- The construction of testing facilities, depots and test track were handed over to Gibela in June 2016.
- The manufacturing process of the 20 train sets in Brazil was completed in August2017, with the arrival of the last sets delivered to Wolmerton Depot.
- The construction of the local manufacturing plant (Local Factory), to manufacture 580 train sets in Dunnottar, Nigel has been completed. Manufacturing activities have commenced and it was anticipated that two new, locally produced trains would be delivered in December 2018.

PRASA launched the new rolling stock on the Pienaarspoort to Pretoria railway corridor in May 2017. The South African rail network is the 11th largest in the world at 22 298 route kilometres, and total track distance of 30 400 km.

Public sector railways comprise three distinct vertically integrated entities, namely the Transnet Freight Rail division of Transnet SOC Ltd (previously Transnet Limited), PRASA and the Gautrain Management Agency.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

SANRAL is responsible for the design, financing, maintenance, operation and rehabilitation of South Africa's national toll and non-toll roads.

The total proclaimed roads in the country amount to approximately 535 000 km in length, 366 872 km of non-urban roads and 168 000 km of urban roads.

Government has set aside R3 billion to upgrade the Limpopo and Mpumalanga sections of the Moloto Road, with an estimated 12 500 jobs to be created over the five-year period of the project.

In the 2018/19 financial year, the department was expected to continue to develop the road network to unlock the Northern Mineral Belt in the Waterberg District (Limpopo), the Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor; the South Eastern node and corridor development, including Mthatha Airport and the N2 Wild Coast; and also to unlock economic opportunities in the North West.

As part of reviewing the Gauteng Freeway Improvement Scheme, the DoT was expected to heighten consultations with all involved government spheres and non-governmental stakeholders. These consultations will form a critical path towards the discussion of the SANRAL Operating model, which includes the New Toll Roads Policy.

Ports Regulator of South Africa

The Ports Regulator of South Africa performs functions that relate mainly to the regulation of pricing and other aspects of economic regulation, the promotion of equity of access to ports facilities and services, the monitoring of the industry's compliance with the regulatory framework, and the hearing of any complaints and appeals lodged with it.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services

The ATNS provides air traffic, navigation, training and associated services within South Africa and a large part of the Southern Indian and Atlantic Ocean, comprising approximately 10% of the world's airspace. South Africa is committed to regional aviation safety, security and environmental issues.

Cross Border Road Transport Agency

The agency's legislative mandate requires it to advise the Minister of Transport on cross border road transport policy, regulate access to the market by the road transport freight and passenger industry in respect of cross border road transport by issuing permits, undertake road transport law enforcement, and play a facilitative role in contributing to economic prosperity of the region.

Railway Safety Regulator

The Railway Safety Regulator oversees and promotes safe railway operations through appropriate support, monitoring and enforcement, guided by an enabling regulatory framework, including regulations for all rail operators in South Africa and those of neighbouring countries whose rail operations enter South Africa.

Road Accident Fund

The mandate of the RAF is to compensate South African road users for loss or damage caused by the negligent driving of motor vehicles within the borders of South Africa.

Road Traffic Infringement Agency

The RTIA promotes road traffic quality by providing for a scheme to discourage road traffic infringements to support the prosecution of offences in terms of national and provincial laws relating to road traffic, and implements a points demerit system.

Road Traffic Management Corporation

The RTMC is responsible for coordinating road-traffic management across the three spheres of government. The core mandate of the corporation is to improve traffic-law compliance and reduce road fatalities.

During 2017/18, the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (AARTO) Amendment Bill was introduced to Parliament and further parliamentary consultative processes have been conducted.

This AARTO Bill, which includes the demerit point system, will bring tougher consequences for traffic offenders; and an envisaged reclassification of traffic violations to Schedule 5 offences to ensure that minimum sentences are introduced for extremely serious traffic violations such as excessive speeding, reckless and negligent driving and driving under the influence of alcohol.

The DoT also intends to harmonise road traffic law enforcement and establish a Single Traffic Police Unit. As part of efforts to alleviate the scourge of road accidents and incidents, the department continues to work tirelessly to ensure that law enforcement is declared an essential service to guarantee availability of traffic officers on a 24/7 on the roads.

Anti-Fraud and Corruption operations would be intensified at all public and private Driver Learning Testing centres and driving schools around the country.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

The SACAA promotes, regulates and enforces civil aviation safety and security standards across the aviation industry.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

The SAMSA promotes South Africa's maritime interests, ensures the safety of life and property at sea, and prevents and combats the pollution of the marine environment by ships.

Transnet Limited

Transnet's mandate is to contribute to lowering the cost of doing business in South Africa, enable economic growth, and ensure security of supply by providing appropriate port, rail and pipeline infrastructure in a cost-effective and efficient manner.

Transnet remains the largest freight logistics company in South Africa, enabling competitiveness, growth and the development of the South African economy by delivering reliable freight transport and handling services that satisfy customer demand.

South African Airways

SAA is the leading carrier in Africa, serving 26 destinations across the continent, as well as major destinations within South Africa and internationally from its Johannesburg hub at OR Tambo International Airport and is a member of the largest international airline network, Star Alliance.

SAA's core business is the provision of passenger airline and cargo transport services together with related services, which are provided through SAA and its four wholly owned subsidiaries: SAA Technical; Mango, its low-cost carrier; Air Chefs, the catering entity of SAA; and South African Travel Centre.

South African Express Airways

SAX is a regional carrier with a mandate to provide transportation services for passengers, cargo and mail, air charters, and other related aviation services on low-density domestic routes and African regional routes.

It operates from OR Tambo International Airport (Johannesburg), King Shaka International Airport (Durban) and Cape Town International Airport, serving secondary routes in South Africa and regional routes to Botswana, Namibia, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Zimbabwe and Zambia. It also provides feeder air services that connect with the South African Airways network.

National Transport Master Plan (NAPMAP)

The NATMAP 2050 is aimed at delivering a dynamic, long-term and sustainable transportation system framework which is demand responsive and that provides a coordinated transport agenda for the whole country.

The NATMAP recognises that efficient, affordable and reliable transport systems are critical components of national economic development.

Rural Transport Strategy

Rural transport development ensures better mobility and access in rural areas. The national transport survey found that a higher percentage of the population cannot afford the high cost of transport.

This limits their access to transport and therefore social and economic opportunities. This perpetuates underdevelopment and isolation from mainstream public transport system.

The National Land Transport Act of 2009 provides for different levels of government to be responsible for planning.

The Rural Transport Strategy is expected to contribute to the formulation of the National Planning Guidelines for rural district municipalities' public transport network plans.

Aviation

Civil aviation serves as a major catalyst for global economic activities and is vital to trade and tourism. South Africa's airport network consists of 135 licensed airports, 19 military airports and up to 1 300 unlicensed aerodromes.

South Africa's nine major airports are:

- OR Tambo International in Gauteng
- Cape Town International in the Western Cape
- King Shaka International in KwaZulu-Natal
- Bram Fischer International in the Free State
- Port Elizabeth International in the Eastern Cape
- Upington International in the Northern Cape
- East London Airport in the Eastern Cape
- George Airport in the Western Cape
- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services

The ATNS provides air traffic, navigation, training and associated services within South Africa and a large part of the Southern Indian and Atlantic Ocean, comprising approximately 10% of the world's airspace. South Africa is committed to regional aviation safety, security and environmental issues.

Public transport

Scholar Transport

The National Scholar Transport Policy provides a framework for safe and secure transport for learners through the cooperation of stakeholders and law-enforcement authorities.

The DoT developed the national operational guidelines to remedy operational challenges that provinces have in implementing the Scholar Transport Programme.

The DoT continues to make a difference in the lives of many learners in rural and farmland areas through the Shova Kalula initiative, which supplies learners with non-motorised mobility in the form of bicycles.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) 2017, more than two-thirds (68,1%) of learners walked to school while a further 8,2% used private vehicles. Another 4,9% travelled to school by taxi or minibus taxi.

Taxi and bus industries

The taxi industry remains the most important part of South Africa's public transport system. Taxis are the preferred type of road transport.

With more than 200 000 taxis on the road, the taxi industry generates about R40 billion per year and has created approximately 300 000 direct and indirect job opportunities, including drivers, taxi marshals and administrative support.

According to Stats SA's GHS 2017, taxis were the most commonly used form of public/subsidised transport in South Africa as 37,1% of households had at least one household member who used a minibus/sedan taxi or bakkie taxi during the week preceding the survey.

While approximately two-thirds (66,8%) of individuals that attended an educational institution walked there, only 20,5% of individuals walked to work. Only 9,4% of individuals travelling to school travelled by private car while a further 7,1% used taxis. Private vehicles remained the most common source of transport.

The Public Transport Strategy, as well as the Taxi Recapitalisation Programme, have been reviewed to enhance provision of integrated public transport solutions. The DoT has also developed the Integrated Public Transport Turnaround Plan, which aims to optimise public transport service offerings in both rural and urban spaces.

Integrated public transport networks

Bus Rapid Transport (BRT)

The BRT Programme is the road-based component of the BRT Public Transport Strategy that was approved by Cabinet in March 2007. It is designed to move large numbers of people to all parts of a city quickly and safely.

The aim of the BRT system is to link different parts of a city into a network. Government wants to ensure that by 2020, most city residents are no more than 500 m away from a BRT station.

The system features dedicated bus-only lanes, as well as bus stations that are safe, comfortable, protected from the weather and friendly to passengers with special needs, such as children, the elderly, the sight and hearing impaired.

It is part of a public-private partnership in which cities build and maintain the infrastructure, stations, depots, control centres and a fare collection system.

Private operators own and manage the buses, hire staff and provide services on a long-term contract.

BRT systems combine the best features of rail with the flexibility and cost advantages of road-based transport, and have the added advantage of being easier and faster to build than a light rail transport system.

The rapid public transport networks which contribute to economic development, job creation and tourism include:

- *MyCiTi* operates in Cape Town, Western Cape.
- *Rea Vaya* in Johannesburg, Gauteng.
- *A Re Yeng* (Let's go) in Pretoria, Gauteng.
- *Go George* in George, Western Cape.
- *Harambee* in Ekurhuleni, Gauteng.
- *Yarona* in Rustenburg, North West.
- *GO!Durban* in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal.

Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80-km long mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and OR Tambo International Airport.

It was built to relieve traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure.

The Gautrain transports about 52 000 people a day (including weekends) or 1,2 million people a year.

In 2017, Gauteng launched a new user-friendly website and mobile application on which users can register and receive profiled and relevant travel information online at their own convenience.

Gautrain offers two distinct train services: an Airport Service linking Sandton and Marlboro to the ORTambo International Airport and a Commuter Service linking Rhodesfield, Marlboro, and Sandton (east-west link) and Park, Rosebank, Sandton, Midrand, Centurion, Pretoria

Central and Hatfield (north-south link). All stations with the exception of the Airport station have integrated car parking facilities. The Gautrain bus fleet currently operates on 25 routes.

Maritime

South African's length of the coastline is estimated to be approximately 3 000 km. In South Africa, the greatest challenge was the absence of a Maritime Transport Policy (MTP) that needed to provide guidance to the industry. This Comprehensive MTP, approved by Cabinet in the 2017/18 financial year, aims to enhance certainty in the transport sector and the logistics market.

South Africa currently has four ships on its Ship Register and there is commitment to grow the SA Ship Register through the creation of a conducive environment and providing incentives to ship-owners as an encouragement to set up offices and possibly register under the South African flag.

By mid-2018, the Merchant Shipping Act of 1951 was being reviewed to take into account developing trends and challenges. The South African Maritime Training Academy at Simon's Town in the Western Cape provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy.

The South African Merchant Navy Academy at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology, with a similar training facility at the Durban Institute of Technology.

The Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre enables South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services. South Africa has a well-established pollution prevention strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threats to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

Arrive Alive campaign

The objectives of the Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign, especially during the Easter and December holidays, are to reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general and fatalities in particular, and improve road-user compliance with traffic laws.

The goals of the campaign are to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5% compared with the same period the previous year.
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws.
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020. The resolution called on member states to take the necessary steps to make their roads safer. The target of the decade is to reduce road fatalities by 50% by 2020.

The World Health Organisation was tasked with monitoring the situation by compiling a Global Status Report on progress made by the different member states towards the achievement of the decade target.

A key aspect of the Integrated Road Safety Management Programme is increasing pedestrian safety. In South Africa, there are close to 14 000 fatal road accidents a year, which cost the country over R300 billion.

The crashes occur as result of drivers not obeying or abiding to the laws in relation to driving of a motor vehicle on a public road. Although road traffic injuries have been a leading cause of mortality for many years, most traffic crashes are both predictable and preventable. Road crashes, injuries and fatalities are a public health problem development issue.

Green Transport Strategy (GTS)

The DoT has developed the GTS, which seeks to address the adverse effects and impacts of transport on the environment and concurrently address the current and future transport demands based on the principles of sustainable development.

The GTS will provide a clear and distinctive route of the environmental policy for the sector, by providing appropriate sector specific climate policy tools and corresponding mitigation and adaptations measures for the transport sector as well as a framework to implement the Transport Flagships within the National Climate Change Response Strategy.

The GTS will also use a basket of measures, which will address imperative issues such as fuel switching for the freight industry to assist with the high emission factor of this sector. The introduction and promotion of the uptake of cleaner fuels such as Liquefied Petroleum Gas and Compressed Natural Gas for freight vehicles will assist and support with the emission reductions efforts of the sector.

The use of cleaner fuels should be supported by Intelligent Transportation Systems that can provide support for this initiative of introducing cleaner transportation and alternative fuel technology for the freight sector, whilst also collecting imperative mitigation data.

The Implementation Plan of the GTS will promote the uptake of “Smart Trucks” and then benchmark against the appropriate international standards to specify the performance required from the operation of a given vehicle on a network, rather than prescribing how the specified level of performance is to be achieved.

This approach will allow more flexibility for vehicle designers to utilise innovative solutions and the latest available technology to meet the required performance standards and improve fuel efficiency.

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA 2017/18

Reference List

Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Website: *www.daff.gov.za*
Private Bag X250, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 319 6000 Fax: 012 319 3618

Arts and Culture
Website: *www.dac.gov.za*
Private Bag X897, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 441 3000 Fax: 012 441 3699

Basic Education
Website: *www.education.gov.za*
Private Bag X895, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 357 3000 Fax: 012 323 0601

Civilian Secretariat for Police
Website: *www.policesecretariat.gov.za*
Private Bag X922, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 393 2500 Fax: 012 393 2538

Communications
Website: *www.doc.gov.za*
Private Bag X860, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 473 0000

Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Website: *www.cogta.gov.za*
Private Bag X804, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 334 0600 Fax: 012 334 0603

Correctional Services
Website: *www.dcs.gov.za*
Private Bag X136, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 307 2998 Fax: 012 323 6088

Defence
Website: *www.dod.mil.za*
Private Bag X427, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 355 6101 Fax: 012 347 0118

Economic Development
Website: *www.economic.gov.za*
Private Bag X84, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 394 3161 Fax: 012 394 0255

Energy
Website: *www.energy.gov.za*
Private Bag X96, Pretoria, 0002
Tel: 012 406 7612 Fax: 012 323 5849

Environmental Affairs
Website: *www.environment.gov.za*
Private Bag X447, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 399 9000 Fax: 012 359 3625

Government Communications (GCIS)
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 473 0000

Health
Website: *www.doh.gov.za*
Private Bag X828, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 395 8000 Fax: 012 395 9165

Higher Education and Training
Website: *www.dhet.gov.za*
Private Bag X174, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 5911 Fax: 012 323 5618

Home Affairs
Website: *www.dha.gov.za*
Private Bag X114, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 406 2500 Fax: 086 512 7864

Human Settlements
Website: *www.dhs.gov.za*
Private Bag X644, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 421 1311 Fax: 012 341 8512

Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
Website: *www.ipid.gov.za*
Private Bag X941, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 399 0000 Fax: 012 326 0408

International Relations and Cooperation
Website: *www.dirco.gov.za*
Private Bag X152, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 351 1000 Fax: 012 329 1000

Justice and Constitutional Development
Website: *www.justice.gov.za*
Private Bag X81, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 315 1111 Fax: 012 315 8130

Labour
Website: *www.labour.gov.za*
Private Bag X117, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 309 4000 Fax: 012 320 2059

Military Veterans
Website: *www.dmv.mil.za*
Private Bag X910, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 355 6103 Fax: 012 347 0118

Mineral Resources
Website: *www.dmr.gov.za*
Private Bag X59, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 444 3000 Fax: 012 341 2228

National School of Government
Website: *www.thensg.gov.za*
Private Bag X759, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 441 6000 Fax: 012 441 6030

National Treasury
Website: *www.treasury.gov.za*
Private Bag X115, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 315 5944 Fax: 012 406 9055

Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation
Website: *www.thepresidency-dpme.gov.za*
Private Bag X944, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 0000 Fax: 012 323 8246

Presidency (The)
Website: *www.thepresidency.gov.za*
Private Bag X1000, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 300 5200 Fax: 012 323 8246

Public Enterprises
Website: *www.dpe.gov.za*
Private Bag X15, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 431 1000 Fax: 086 501 2624

Public Service and Administration
Website: *www.dpsa.gov.za*
Private Bag X916, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 336 1063 Fax: 012 336 1803

Public Works
Website: *www.publicworks.gov.za*
Private Bag X65, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 406 1000 Fax: 086 272 8986

Rural Development and Land Reform
Website: *www.ruraldevelopment.gov.za*
Private Bag X833, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 8911 Fax: 012 312 8066

Science and Technology
Website: *www.dst.gov.za*
Private Bag X894, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 843 6300 Fax: 012 349 1037

Social Development
Website: *www.dsd.gov.za*
Private Bag X901, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 7500 Fax: 012 312 7470

South African Police Service
Website: *www.saps.gov.za*
Private Bag X94, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 393 1000 Fax: 012 393 4147

South African Revenue Service
Website: *www.sars.gov.za*
Private Bag X923, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 422 4000 Fax: 012 670 6880

Sport and Recreation South Africa
Website: *www.srsa.gov.za*
Private Bag X896, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 304 5000 Fax: 012 323 8440

State Security
Website: *www.ssa.gov.za*
PO Box 1037, Menlyn, 0077
Tel: 012 367 0754 Fax: 012 367 0749

Statistics South Africa
Website: *www.statssa.gov.za*
Private Bag X44, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 310 8911 Fax: 012 310 8944

Telecommunications and Postal Services
Website: *www.dtps.gov.za*
Private Bag X860, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 427 8000 Fax: 012 427 8110

Tourism
Website: *www.tourism.gov.za*
Private Bag X424, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 444 6000 Fax: 012 444 7000

Trade and Industry
Website: *www.thedti.gov.za*
Private Bag X84, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 0861 843 384 Fax: 0861 843 888

Traditional Affairs
Website: *www.cogta.gov.za*
Private Bag X804, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 334 0600

Transport
Website: *www.transport.gov.za*
Private Bag X193, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 309 3000 Fax: 012 328 3370

Water and Sanitation
Website: *www.dwa.gov.za*
Private Bag X313, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 336 7500 Fax: 012 336 8664

Women
Website: *www.women.gov.za*
Private Bag X931, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 359 0000 Fax: 012 326 0473